

## § 1 Preliminaries

### 1.1 Notations

Set : collection of objects (elements)

$\subseteq$  : subset

$\in$  : belongs to

Example 1.1.1

$$S = \{1, 2, 3\}$$

That means  $S$  is a set containing 3 elements, namely 1, 2 and 3.

$$\text{OR : } 1, 2, 3 \in S$$

If  $T = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ , then we say  $S$  is a subset of  $T$ , or  $S \subseteq T$ .

That means every element in  $S$  is also an element in  $T$ .

Notations often used in this course :

$\mathbb{Z}^+$  : set of all positive integers

$\mathbb{Z}$  : set of all integers

$\mathbb{Q}$  : set of all rational numbers

$\mathbb{R}$  : set of all real numbers

$\emptyset$  : empty set, i.e.  $\emptyset = \{ \}$  Nothing

$[a, b]$  : set of all real numbers  $x$  such that  $a \leq x \leq b$

$(a, b)$  : set of all real numbers  $x$  such that  $a < x < b$

$[a, \infty)$  : set of all real numbers  $x$  such that  $a \leq x$

Example 1.1.2

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Set of all positive even integers} &= \{2, 4, 6, \dots\} \\ &= \{2m : m \in \mathbb{Z}^+\} \end{aligned}$$

i.e. this set consists of elements of the form  $2m$  such that  $m \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .

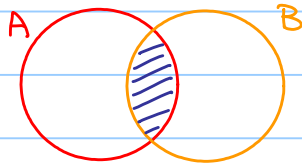
Exercise 1.1.1

Set of all positive odd integers = ? (How to describe?)

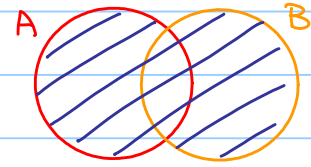
$$\text{Answer : } \{2m-1 : m \in \mathbb{Z}^+\}$$

## Set Operations :

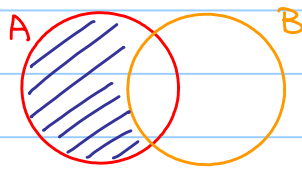
Let  $A, B$  be two sets.



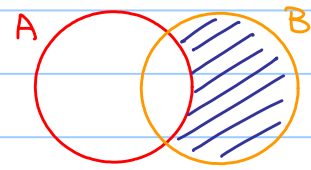
Intersection :  $A \cap B$



Union :  $A \cup B$



Relative complement of  $B$  in  $A$  :  $A \setminus B$



Relative complement of  $A$  in  $B$  :  $B \setminus A$

### Example 1.1.3

Let  $A = \{1, 2\}$ ,  $B = \{2, 3\}$ ,  $C = \{3\}$

- $A \cap B = \{2\}$      $A \cap C = \emptyset$
- $A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3\}$
- $A \setminus B = \{1\}$      $B \setminus A = \{3\}$

### Example 1.1.4

$\mathbb{R} \setminus \{2\}$  : set of all real numbers except 2

( Caution : We cannot write  $\mathbb{R} \setminus 2$  as 2 is not a set ! )

### Example 1.1.5

Solve  $x^2 > 1$ .

$\therefore x > 1$  or  $x < -1$

OR :  $x \in (-\infty, -1) \cup (1, \infty)$

OR :  $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus [-1, 1]$

$\forall$  : for all

$\exists$  : there exists (at least one)

$\exists!$  : there exists unique

$\Rightarrow$  : implies

$\Leftrightarrow$  : if and only if (equivalent to)

s.t. : such that

Example 1.1.6

$\forall y \in (0, \infty), \exists x \in \mathbb{R}$  s.t.  $x^2 = y$

↓ translate

For all positive real numbers  $y$ , there exists (at least one) real number  $x$  such that  $x^2 = y$ .

(In fact,  $x = \sqrt{y}$  or  $x = -\sqrt{y}$ )

$\forall y \in (0, \infty), \exists! x \in (0, \infty)$  s.t.  $x^2 = y$

↓ translate

For all positive real numbers  $y$ , there exists unique positive real number  $x$  such that  $x^2 = y$ .

(In fact,  $x = \sqrt{y}$  only!)

Example 1.1.7

Let  $x > 0$ ,  $y = \sqrt{x} \xRightarrow{\checkmark} y^2 = x$   
 $y^2 = x \xRightarrow{\times} y = \sqrt{x}$  (Why?)

Example 1.1.8

In  $\triangle ABC$ ,

$\angle ABC = 90^\circ \Rightarrow AB^2 + BC^2 = AC^2$  (Pyth. thm.)

$AB^2 + BC^2 = AC^2 \Rightarrow \angle ABC = 90^\circ$  (Converse of Pyth. thm.)

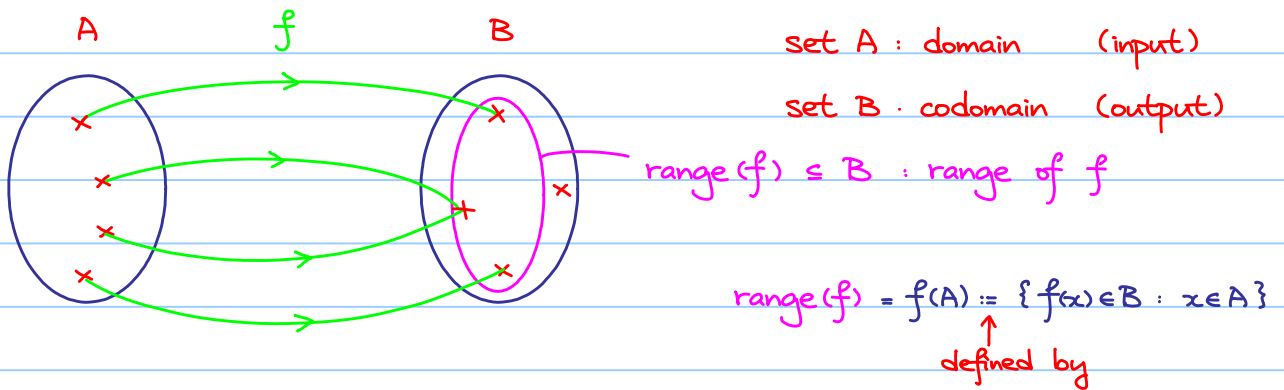
If both statements are true, we say

$\angle ABC = 90^\circ$  if and only if  $AB^2 + BC^2 = AC^2$

and we denote it by  $\angle ABC = 90^\circ \Leftrightarrow AB^2 + BC^2 = AC^2$

## 1.2 Functions

Function: A function is a rule that assigns to each element in a set A exactly one element in a set B.



A function  $f$  from A to B is denoted by  $f: A \rightarrow B$

### Example 1.2.1

- If 1)  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = x^2$        $\text{range}(f) = [0, \infty)$   
 2)  $f: [-1, 2] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = x^2$        $\text{range}(f) = [0, 4)$

### Example 1.2.2

If  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = x^2 + 4$

$$f(-3) = (-3)^2 + 4 = 13$$

$\uparrow$   
input
 $\uparrow$   
output

OR write:  $y = x^2 + 4$

$\uparrow$   
dependent variable
 $\uparrow$   
independent variable

### Example 1.2.3

If  $f(x) = \frac{2x}{x^2 - 7x}$ , find the (maximum) domain of  $f$ .

Note:  $f(x) = \frac{2x}{x^2 - 7x}$  is a well-defined function if  $x^2 - 7x \neq 0$ .

$$x^2 - 7x = 0$$

$$x(x - 7) = 0$$

$$x = 0 \text{ or } 7$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Domain of } f &= \{x \in \mathbb{R} : x \neq 0, 7\} \\ &= (-\infty, 0) \cup (0, 7) \cup (7, \infty) \\ &= \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0, 7\} \end{aligned}$$

### Example 1.2.4

If  $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 4x + 3}$ , find the (maximum) domain of  $f$ .

Note:  $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 4x + 3}$  is a well-defined function if  $x^2 - 4x + 3 \geq 0$

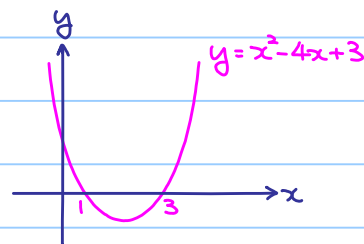
$$x^2 - 4x + 3 \geq 0$$

$$x \leq 1 \text{ or } x \geq 3$$

$$\therefore \text{Domain of } f = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : x \leq 1 \text{ or } x \geq 3\}$$

$$= (-\infty, 1] \cup [3, \infty)$$

$$= \mathbb{R} \setminus (1, 3)$$



### Exercise 1.2.1

If  $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - 4x + 3}}$ , find the (maximum) domain of  $f$ .

Note:  $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - 4x + 3}}$  is a well-defined function if  $x^2 - 4x + 3 > 0$ .

$$\text{Ans: Domain of } f = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : x < 1 \text{ or } x > 3\}$$

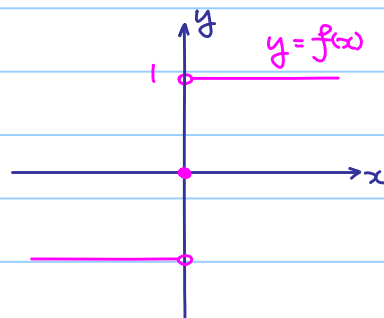
$$= (-\infty, 1) \cup (3, \infty)$$

$$= \mathbb{R} \setminus [1, 3]$$

### Piecewise Defined Function

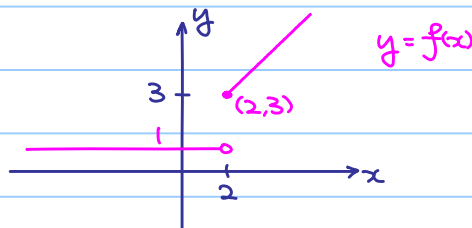
#### Example 1.2.5

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ -1 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$



#### Example 1.2.6

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1 & \text{if } x \geq 2 \\ 1 & \text{if } x < 2 \end{cases}$$



#### Exercise 1.2.2

Sketch the graph of  $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x+1 & \text{if } x > 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ -x^2 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$

### Example 1.2.7

Absolute Value:  $f(x) = |x| = \sqrt{x^2}$

For example:  $|3| = \sqrt{3^2} = \sqrt{9} = 3$

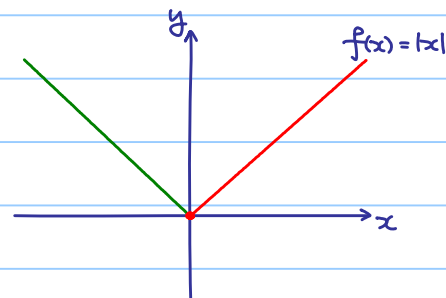
$$|0| = \sqrt{0^2} = \sqrt{0} = 0$$

$$|-3| = \sqrt{(-3)^2} = \sqrt{9} = 3$$

(Simply speaking: throw away the negative sign)

Rewrite  $|x|$  as a piecewise defined function:

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$



### Example 1.2.8

Let  $f(x) = |x+1| + |x-1|$ .

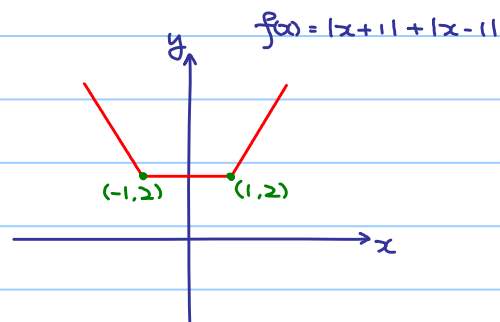
What is the graph of  $f(x)$ ?

💡 Idea: Rewrite  $f(x)$  as a piecewise defined function.

$$\text{Note: } |x+1| = \begin{cases} x+1 & \text{if } x+1 \geq 0 \text{ (i.e. } x \geq -1) \\ -(x+1) & \text{if } x+1 < 0 \text{ (i.e. } x < -1) \end{cases}$$

$$|x-1| = \begin{cases} x-1 & \text{if } x-1 \geq 0 \text{ (i.e. } x \geq 1) \\ -(x-1) & \text{if } x-1 < 0 \text{ (i.e. } x < 1) \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore f(x) = |x+1| + |x-1| = \begin{cases} -(x+1) - (x-1) = -2x & \text{if } x < -1 \\ (x+1) - (x-1) = 2 & \text{if } -1 \leq x < 1 \\ (x+1) + (x-1) = 2x & \text{if } x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$



$$f(-1) = 2 \text{ and } f(1) = 2(1) = 2.$$

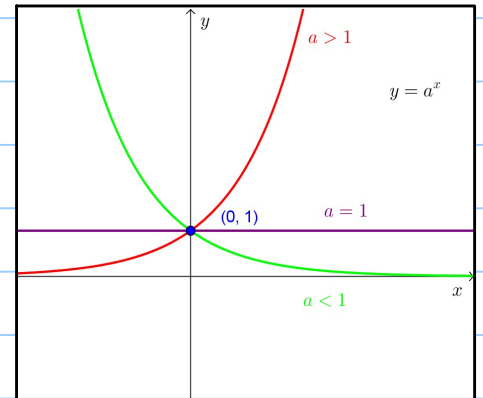
## Exponential and Logarithmic Functions:

•  $y = a^x$  with  $a > 0$

Note:  $y = a^x$  is well-defined when  $a > 0$ !

Think: If  $a = -1$ , when  $x = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $y = a^x = \sqrt{-1}$ !

$a^x$  is positive for any  $a > 0$  and any real number  $x$ .



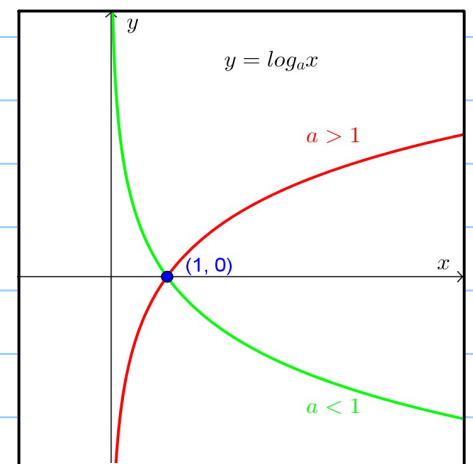
graph of  $y = a^x$  for

- 1)  $a > 1$     2)  $a = 1$     3)  $0 < a < 1$

•  $y = \log_a x$  with  $a > 1$  or  $0 < a < 1$

Note:  $y = \log_a x$  is well-defined  
when  $a > 1$  or  $0 < a < 1$ !

By definition, if  $y = a^x$ , then  $\log_a y = x$



graph of  $y = \log_a x$  for

- 1)  $a > 1$     2)  $0 < a < 1$

Facts:

1)  $\log_a M + \log_a N = \log_a MN$

2)  $\log_a M - \log_a N = \log_a \frac{M}{N}$

3)  $\log_a M^n = n \log_a M$

4)  $\log_a x = \frac{\log_b x}{\log_b a}$  (Change of base)

5)  $e = 2.71828\dots$  (Explain later)

We write  $\log_e x$  as  $\ln x$  (natural log function)

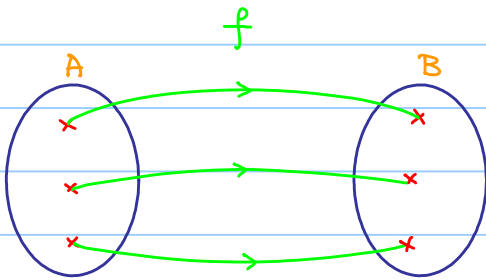
6)  $a^x$  and  $\log_a x$  are inverse to each other,  
i.e.  $a^{\log_a x} = x$  and  $\log_a a^x = x$

## Injective and Surjective Functions

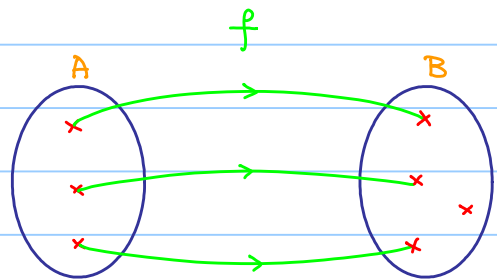
Intuitive idea:

injective : every  $y \in \text{range}(f)$  comes from **exactly one**  $x \in A$

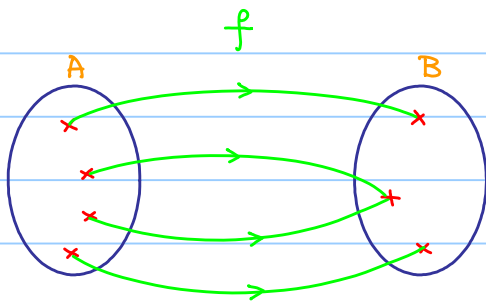
surjective : every  $y \in B$  comes from **at least one**  $x \in A$



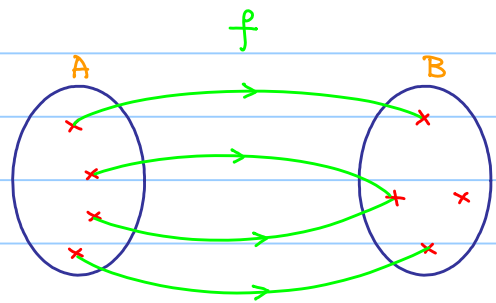
Both injective and surjective



injective but not surjective



surjective but not injective



Neither injective nor surjective

### Definition 1.2.1

Let  $f: A \rightarrow B$  be a function.

1)  $f$  is said to be an **injective** function if

$$f(x_1) = f(x_2) \Rightarrow x_1 = x_2$$

(Explanation: Once the output are the same, the inputs must be the same!)

2)  $f$  is said to be a **surjective** function if

$$\forall y \in B, \exists x \in A \text{ st. } f(x) = y \quad (\text{i.e. } f(A) = B)$$

If  $f$  is both injective and surjective, then it is said to be **bijective**.



### Example 1.2.9

Show that  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = 2x + 3$  is a bijective function.

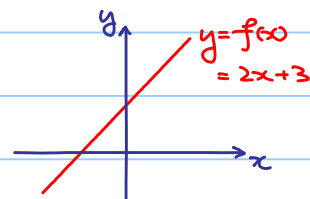
1) Injective:

$$f(x) = f(x)$$

$$\Rightarrow 2x_1 + 3 = 2x_2 + 3$$

$$\Rightarrow x_1 = x_2$$

$\therefore f$  is injective.



2) Surjective:

Let  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$\text{take } x = \frac{y-3}{2} \in \mathbb{R}$$

$$f(x) = f\left(\frac{y-3}{2}\right)$$

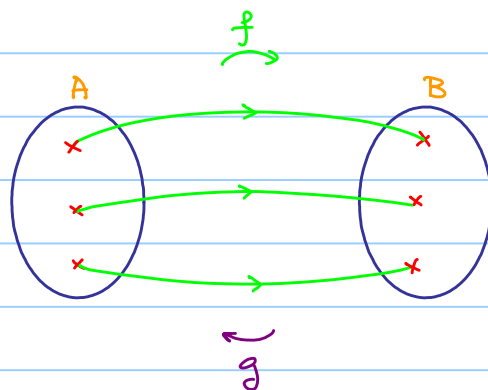
$$= 2\left(\frac{y-3}{2}\right) + 3$$

$$= y$$

$\therefore f$  is surjective.

### Inverse of a Function:

Intuitive idea:



### Definition 1.2.2

Let  $f: A \rightarrow B$  be a function. If  $g: B \rightarrow A$  is a function such that

1)  $g(f(x)) = x \quad \forall x \in A$

2)  $f(g(y)) = y \quad \forall y \in B$

Then  $g$  is said to be an inverse of  $f$ .

Fact: 1) Once an inverse of  $f$  exists, it is unique, so we denote it by  $f^{-1}$

2)  $f$  has an inverse if and only if  $f$  is bijective.

### Example 1.2.10

		injective	surjective
$f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$	defined by $f(x) = \sin x$	✗	✗
$f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow [-1, 1]$	defined by $f(x) = \sin x$	✗	✓
$f: [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}] \rightarrow [-1, 1]$	defined by $f(x) = \sin x$	✓	✓

$f: [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}] \rightarrow [-1, 1]$  defined by  $f(x) = \sin x$  is a bijective function

$\therefore$  we can define arcsin function!

$$\sin^{-1}: [-1, 1] \rightarrow [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$$

$$\text{We write } \sin: [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}] \rightarrow [-1, 1]$$

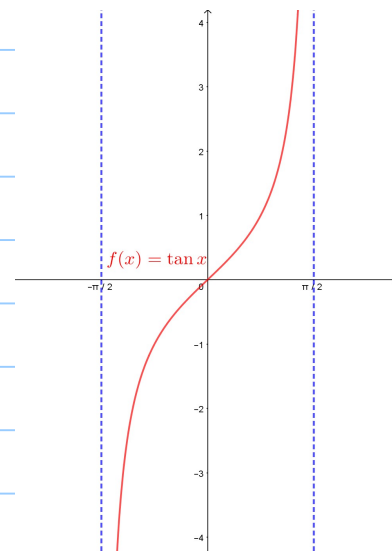
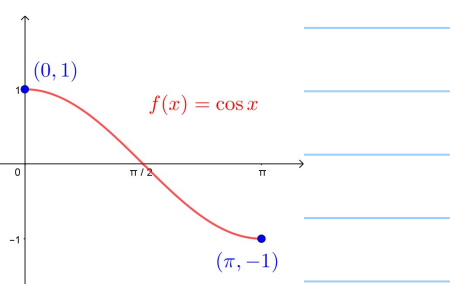
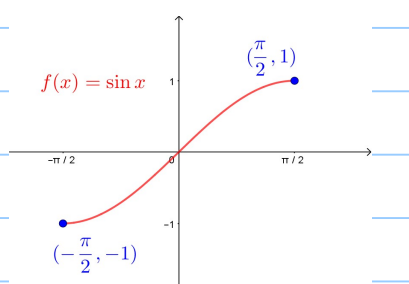
$$\sin^{-1}(\sin x) = x \quad \forall x \in [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$$

$$\sin(\sin^{-1} y) = y \quad \forall y \in [-1, 1]$$

Furthermore,

$\cos: [0, \pi] \rightarrow [-1, 1]$  is bijective and  $\cos^{-1}: [-1, 1] \rightarrow [0, \pi]$

$\tan: (-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is bijective and  $\tan^{-1}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow (-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$



### Example 1.2.12

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow (0, \infty)$  defined by  $f(x) = e^x$ .

Note that  $f$  is bijective, so  $f^{-1}: (0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  can be defined and it is denoted by  $f^{-1}(x) = \ln x$ .

Then, we have

- 1)  $f^{-1}(f(x)) = \ln(e^x) = x \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$ ;
- 2)  $f(f^{-1}(y)) = e^{\ln y} = y \quad \forall y \in (0, \infty)$ .

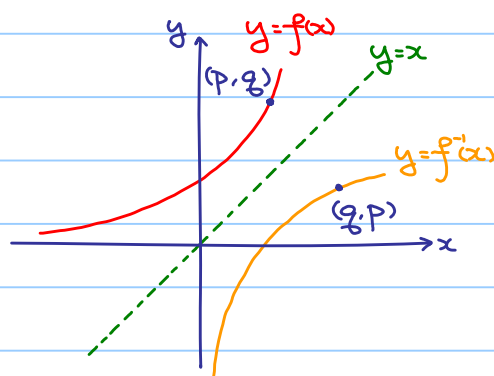
Fact: The graph of  $f^{-1}$  is the reflection of the graph of  $f$  along  $y=x$ .

Reason:  $(p, q)$  lies on the graph of  $f$

$$\Leftrightarrow f(p) = q$$

$$\Leftrightarrow f^{-1}(q) = p$$

$\Leftrightarrow (q, p)$  lies on the graph of  $f^{-1}$



### Even, Odd and Periodic Functions

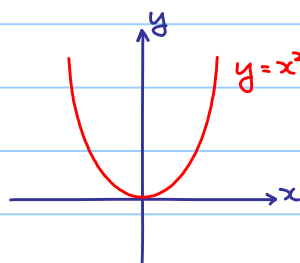
#### Definition 1.2.3

A function  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is said to be

• even if  $f(-x) = f(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$

e.g.  $x^2$ ,  $\cos x$ ,  $|x|$

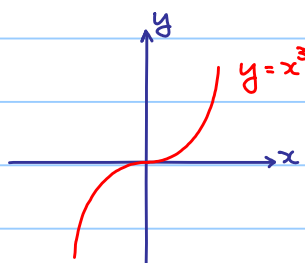
property: the graph is symmetric along y-axis.



• odd if  $f(-x) = -f(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$

e.g.  $x^3$ ,  $\sin x$

property: the graph is symmetric about the origin



#### Exercise 1.2.3

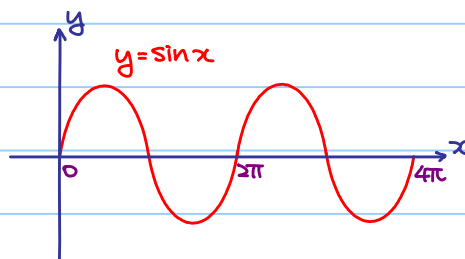
If  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is an odd function, show that  $f(0) = 0$ .

• periodic if there exists  $T > 0$  such that  $f(x) = f(x+T)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$

If  $T > 0$  is the least positive real number with the above property,  $T$  is called the period.

e.g.  $\sin x$ ,  $\cos x$ ,  $\tan x$

property: the graph is repeating again and again



period of  $\sin x$ ,  $\cos x = 2\pi$

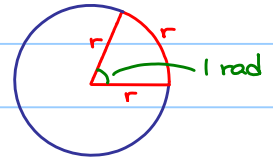
period of  $\tan x = \pi$

### 1.3 Trigonometry

Another unit of measurement of angles (radian):

Definition 1.3.1

When the length of an arc equals to the radius, the angle subtended is defined as 1 radian.



Direct consequence:  $2\pi \text{ rad} = 360^\circ$

Exercise:  $\pi \text{ rad} = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$

$\underline{\hspace{2cm}} = 90^\circ$

$\underline{\hspace{2cm}} = 60^\circ$

Remark: From now on, use radian.

Area of sector  $A \propto \theta$

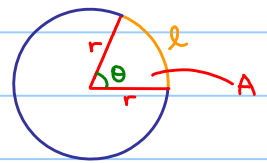
$$\frac{A}{\pi r^2} = \frac{\theta}{2\pi}$$

$$A = \frac{1}{2} r^2 \theta$$

Arclength  $l \propto \theta$

$$\frac{l}{2\pi r} = \frac{\theta}{2\pi}$$

$$l = r\theta$$



Trigonometric identities:

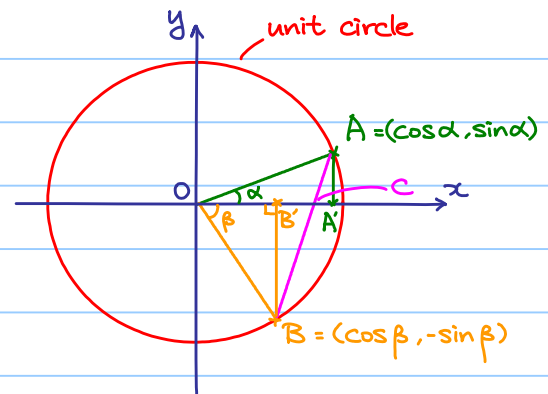
① Consider the length of AB:

$$i) AB^2 = OA^2 + OB^2 - 2\cos(\alpha + \beta) = 2 - 2\cos(\alpha + \beta)$$

$$ii) AB^2 = (AA' + BB')^2 + (A'B')^2 = (\sin\alpha + \sin\beta)^2 + (\cos\alpha - \cos\beta)^2$$

$$= 2 - 2\cos\alpha\cos\beta + 2\sin\alpha\sin\beta$$

$$\therefore \cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta$$



② Join AB, AB cuts the x-axis at C. Then  $C = \left( \frac{\sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta}{\sin\alpha + \sin\beta}, 0 \right)$

Consider the area of  $\triangle OAB$ :

$$i) \text{ area of } \triangle OAB = \frac{1}{2} OA \cdot OB \cdot \sin(\alpha + \beta) = \frac{1}{2} \sin(\alpha + \beta)$$

$$ii) \text{ area of } \triangle OAB = \text{area of } \triangle OAC + \text{area of } \triangle OBC$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot OC \cdot AA' + \frac{1}{2} \cdot OC \cdot BB'$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot OC \cdot (AA' + BB')$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{\sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta}{\sin\alpha + \sin\beta} (\sin\alpha + \sin\beta) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot (\sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta)$$

$$\therefore \sin(\alpha + \beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta$$

### Theorem 1.3.1

$$\cos(\alpha+\beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta$$

$$\sin(\alpha+\beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta$$

### Compound angle formula

$$\sin(\alpha+\beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta$$

$$\sin(\alpha-\beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta - \cos\alpha\sin\beta$$

$$\cos(\alpha+\beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta$$

$$\cos(\alpha-\beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta + \sin\alpha\sin\beta$$

↓ taking quotient  
of the 1st and the 3rd eq<sup>n</sup>

$$\tan(\alpha+\beta) = \frac{\tan\alpha + \tan\beta}{1 - \tan\alpha\tan\beta}$$

$$\tan(\alpha-\beta) = \frac{\tan\alpha - \tan\beta}{1 + \tan\alpha\tan\beta}$$

### Double angle formula

put  $\beta = \alpha$  →  $\cos 2\alpha = \cos^2\alpha - \sin^2\alpha$

$$= 2\cos^2\alpha - 1 = 1 - 2\sin^2\alpha$$

put  $\beta = \alpha$  →  $\sin 2\alpha = 2\sin\alpha\cos\alpha$

put  $\beta = \alpha$  →  $\tan 2\alpha = \frac{2\tan\alpha}{1 - \tan^2\alpha}$

### Product to sum formula

$$2\cos\alpha\cos\beta = \cos(\alpha+\beta) + \cos(\alpha-\beta)$$

$$-2\sin\alpha\sin\beta = \cos(\alpha+\beta) - \cos(\alpha-\beta)$$

$$2\sin\alpha\cos\beta = \sin(\alpha+\beta) + \sin(\alpha-\beta)$$

$$2\cos\alpha\sin\beta = \sin(\alpha+\beta) - \sin(\alpha-\beta)$$

put  $\alpha = \frac{A+B}{2}$ ,  $\beta = \frac{A-B}{2}$

### Sum to product formula

$$\sin A + \sin B = 2\sin\frac{A+B}{2}\cos\frac{A-B}{2}$$

$$\sin A - \sin B = 2\cos\frac{A+B}{2}\sin\frac{A-B}{2}$$

$$\cos A + \cos B = 2\cos\frac{A+B}{2}\cos\frac{A-B}{2}$$

$$\cos A - \cos B = -2\sin\frac{A+B}{2}\sin\frac{A-B}{2}$$

## 1.4 Sequences of Real Numbers

### Example 1.4.1

Let  $a_1 = 2$ ,  $a_2 = \pi$ ,  $a_3 = \sqrt{3}$ , ...

OR write as  $\{2, \pi, \sqrt{3}, \dots\}$  (No pattern)

### Example 1.4.2

Sequences having patterns:

Let  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_2 = 2$ ,  $a_3 = 4$ , ... in general,  $a_n = 2^{n-1}$

Let  $a_1 = 1$ ,  $a_2 = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $a_3 = \frac{1}{3}$ , ... in general,  $a_n = \frac{1}{n}$

Let  $a_1 = -1$ ,  $a_2 = 1$ ,  $a_3 = -1$ , ... in general,  $a_n = (-1)^n$

### Example 1.4.3

Recursive sequence.

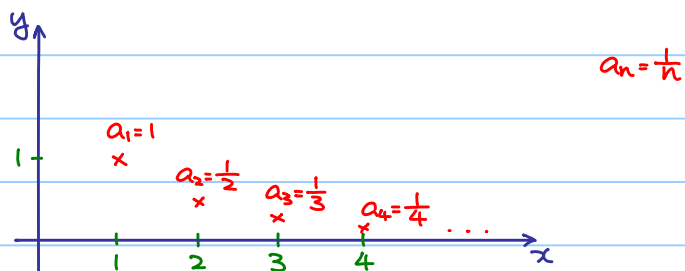
Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of real numbers defined by  $a_1 = 1$  and  $a_{n+1} = a_n^2 + 2$  for  $n \geq 1$ .

Then  $\{a_n\} = \{1, 3, 11, 123, \dots\}$ .

### Remark / Definition 1.4.1

A sequence of real numbers  $\{a_n\}$  can be regarded as a function  $f: \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $a_n = f(n)$  (i.e. given  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , return the  $n$ -th term of the sequence.)

A sequence can be visualized by the following diagram:



Any observation?

When  $n$  is getting larger and larger,  $a_n$  is getting closer and closer to 0.

## § 2 Limits of Sequences

### 2.1 Definition

Definition 2.1.1 (Informal)

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of real numbers.

If  $n$  is getting larger and larger,  $a_n$  is getting closer and closer to  $L \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

then we say  $L$  is the limit of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  and we denote it by  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = L$ .

In this case,  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be convergent, or  $\{a_n\}$  converges to  $L$ .

Example 2.1.1

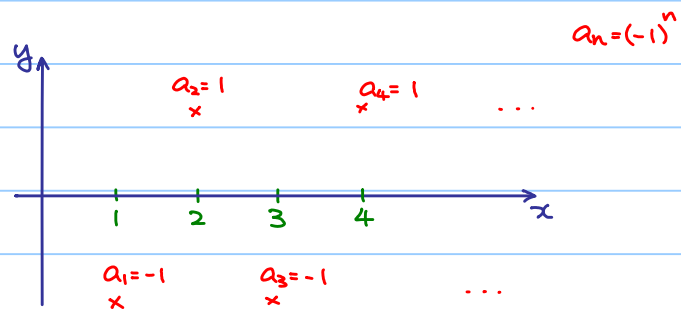
$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} = 0. \quad (\text{However, } \frac{1}{n} \neq 0 \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+)$$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 2^{n-1} \text{ does NOT exist.}$$

(But some still write  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 2^{n-1} = +\infty$  or

say  $2^{n-1}$  diverges to  $+\infty$ )

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (-1)^n \text{ does NOT exist.}$$

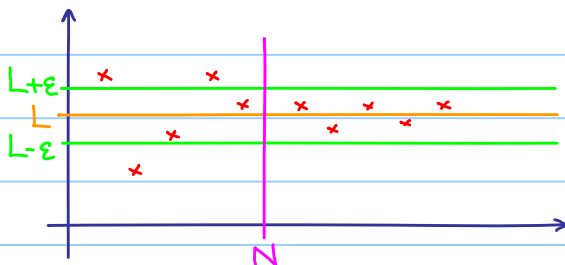


Definition 2.1.2 ( $\varepsilon$ -definition)

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of real numbers and  $L \in \mathbb{R}$ .

$L$  is said to be the limit of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  if

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0, \exists N \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \text{ s.t. } |a_n - L| < \varepsilon \quad \forall n \geq N.$$



Meaning: No matter how small  $\varepsilon$  is given,

we can always find a  $N \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that the tail ( $a_n$  with  $n \geq N$ ) of the sequence

lies in the  $\varepsilon$ -tunnel ( $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of  $L$ )

### Theorem 2.1.1

- 1) If  $a_n = k \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  (constant sequence), then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = k$ .
- 2) If  $k > 0$  and  $a_n = n^{-k} = \frac{1}{n^k}$ , then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$ .
- 3) If  $-1 < a < 1$ , then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a^n = 0$ .

Remark: It seems that all the above are obvious, but we need to check the  $\varepsilon$ -definition, which is hard.

## 2.2 Algebraic Properties of Limits

### Theorem 2.2.1

Let  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  be sequences of real numbers.

If  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = L$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = M$  (very important assumption), then

- 1)  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n + b_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = L + M$
- 2)  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n - b_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = L - M$
- 3)  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n b_n = (\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n)(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n) = LM$
- 4) If  $M \neq 0$ ,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{a_n}{b_n} = \frac{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n}{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n} = \frac{L}{M}$

### Example 2.2.1

Find  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2}{n} + 3$

Logically:

$$\textcircled{1} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 2 = 2, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} = 0, \quad \text{so} \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2}{n} \stackrel{\text{By (3)}}{=} (\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 2) (\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n}) = 2 \cdot 0 = 0$$

$$\textcircled{2} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2}{n} = 0, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 3 = 3, \quad \text{so} \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2}{n} + 3 \stackrel{\text{By (1)}}{=} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2}{n} + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 3 = 0 + 3 = 3$$

But what we write:

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2}{n} + 3 &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2}{n} + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 3 \\ &= 0 + 3 \\ &= 3 \end{aligned}$$



### Example 2.2.2

$$\text{Find } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n^2+3}{2n^2-4n}$$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n^2+3}{2n^2-4n} \quad (\text{We cannot use (4), why?})$$

$$= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1 + \frac{3}{n^2}}{2 - \frac{4}{n}} \quad (\text{Now, we can use (4)!})$$

$$= \frac{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 1 + \frac{3}{n^2}}{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 2 - \frac{4}{n}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}$$

### Exercise 2.2.1

$$\text{Find } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3n+1}{n^2-2n}, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n^3+2n}{2n^2+1} \quad (\text{if exist})$$

$$\text{Answer: } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3n+1}{n^2-2n} \leftarrow \text{grows faster} \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n^3+2n}{2n^2+1} \leftarrow \text{grows faster}$$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3n+1}{n^2-2n} = 0, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n^3+2n}{2n^2+1} \text{ does NOT exist}$$

Any observation?

Basically, we are comparing the degrees of the numerator and the denominator.

Conclusion:

If  $p(x)$  and  $q(x)$  are polynomials,

$$p(x) = a_m x^m + a_{m-1} x^{m-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \quad \text{with } a_m \neq 0 \quad (\text{deg } p(x) = m)$$

$$q(x) = b_k x^k + a_{k-1} x^{k-1} + \dots + b_1 x + b_0 \quad \text{with } b_k \neq 0 \quad (\text{deg } q(x) = k)$$

then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{p(n)}{q(n)} = \begin{cases} \pm\infty & \text{if } m > k \\ \frac{a_m}{b_m} & \text{if } m = k \\ 0 & \text{if } m < k \end{cases}$$

Following this idea:

Example 2.2.3

Find  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3n-1}{\sqrt{4n^2+2n}}$

$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3n-1}{\sqrt{4n^2+2n}}$  ← roughly deg = 1

$= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3 - \frac{1}{n}}{\sqrt{4 + \frac{2}{n}}}$

$= \frac{3}{2}$

Example 2.2.4

Find  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt{n+1} - \sqrt{n}$

(Never say  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt{n+1} - \sqrt{n} = \infty - \infty = 0$ )

$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt{n+1} - \sqrt{n}$

$= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (\sqrt{n+1} - \sqrt{n}) \cdot \frac{\sqrt{n+1} + \sqrt{n}}{\sqrt{n+1} + \sqrt{n}}$

$= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{n+1} + \sqrt{n}}$

$= 0$

Example 2.2.5

Find  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2^n}{n}$ .

Question: Can we say  $\frac{2^n}{n} = \frac{1}{n} \cdot 2^n$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} = 0$ , so  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2^n}{n} = 0$ ?

Absolutely NOT!

Since  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 2^n$  does NOT exist, property (3) cannot be applied!

## 2.3 Monotonic Sequence Theorem

### Definition 2.3.1

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of real numbers.

(i)  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be **bounded above** if  $\exists M \in \mathbb{R}$  s.t.  $a_n \leq M$  (called an upper bound)  $\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$

(ii)  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be **bounded below** if  $\exists M \in \mathbb{R}$  s.t.  $a_n \geq M$  (called a lower bound)  $\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$

(iii)  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be **bounded** if  $\exists M > 0$  s.t.  $|a_n| \leq M$  (i.e.  $-M \leq a_n \leq M$ )  $\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$

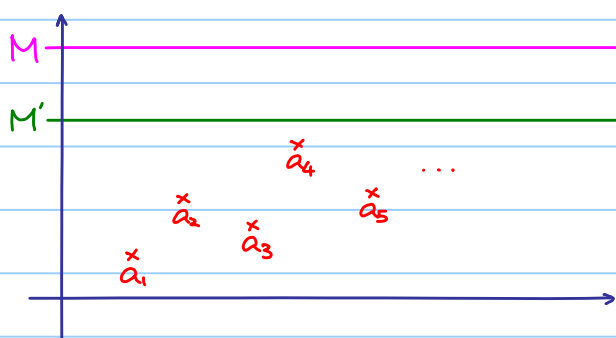
**bounded** = both bounded above and below

(iv)  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be **monotonic increasing** if  $a_{n+1} \geq a_n$   $\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$

(v)  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be **monotonic decreasing** if  $a_{n+1} \leq a_n$   $\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$

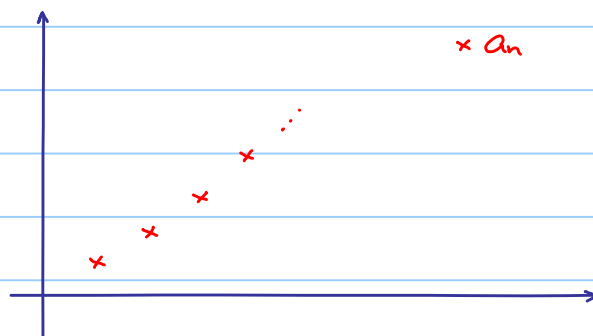
(vi)  $\{a_n\}$  is said to be **monotonic** if it is either monotonic increasing or decreasing

Geometrical meaning:



$\{a_n\}$  is bounded above by  $M$

However, it may happen that a sharper upper bound  $M'$  exists.



$\{a_n\}$  is monotonic increasing

### Example 2.3.1

$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 2^{n-1}$  does NOT exist. (monotonic but not bounded)      monotonic  $\not\Rightarrow$  convergent

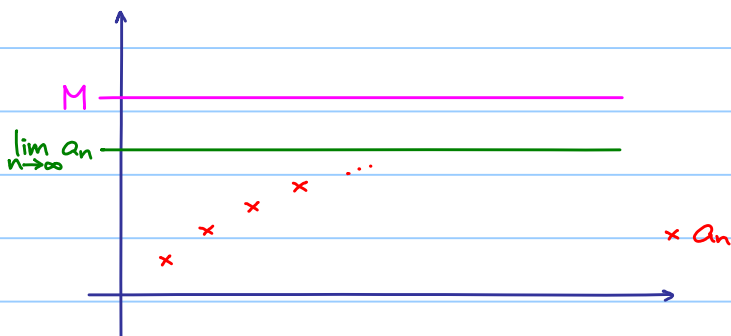
$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (-1)^n$  does NOT exist. (bounded but not monotonic)      bounded  $\not\Rightarrow$  convergent

How about combining them together?

### Theorem 2.3.1 (Monotone Convergence Theorem)

If  $\{a_n\}$  is bounded above (below) and monotonic increasing (decreasing), then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$  exists.

Geometrical meaning:



Caution:

$\{a_n\}$  is bounded above by  $M$ .

but  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$  is NOT necessary to be  $M$ .

### Example 2.3.2

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of positive real numbers defined by

$$a_1 = 1 \text{ and } a_{n+1} = 1 + \frac{a_n}{1+a_n} \quad (n \geq 1)$$

Does  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$  exist?

i) Claim:  $\{a_n\}$  is monotonic increasing

Prove the statement " $a_{n+1} \geq a_n$ " by induction:

$$\text{Step 1: } a_2 - a_1 = \left(1 + \frac{a_1}{1+a_1}\right) - a_1 = \frac{3}{2} - 1 = \frac{1}{2} > 0$$

Step 2: Assume  $a_{k+1} \geq a_k$  for some  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$

$$\begin{aligned} a_{k+2} - a_{k+1} &= \left(1 + \frac{a_{k+1}}{1+a_{k+1}}\right) - \left(1 + \frac{a_k}{1+a_k}\right) \\ &= \frac{a_{k+1}}{1+a_{k+1}} - \frac{a_k}{1+a_k} \\ &= \frac{a_{k+1} - a_k}{(1+a_{k+1})(1+a_k)} \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

ii)  $\{a_n\}$  is bounded above by 2.

∴ By Monotone Convergence Theorem,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$  exists (But, what is the value?)

Let  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = A$

Note that  $a_{n+1} = 1 + \frac{a_n}{1+a_n}$ , taking limit on both sides

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_{n+1} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( 1 + \frac{a_n}{1+a_n} \right) = 1 + \frac{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n}{1 + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n}$$

$$A = 1 + \frac{A}{1+A}$$

$$A^2 - A - 1 = 0$$

$$A = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2} \text{ or } \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2} \text{ (rejected)}$$

Note: the limit is NOT 2.

Constant e:

Consider a number  $(1 + \frac{1}{m})^n$  which depends on both m and n and then

1) fix m, say m = 100, n is getting larger and larger.

$$\begin{array}{cccc} n = 10 & n = 100 & n = 1000 & n \rightarrow \infty \\ (1 + \frac{1}{m})^n = 1.01^{10} & (1 + \frac{1}{m})^n = 1.01^{100} & (1 + \frac{1}{m})^n = 1.01^{1000} & (1 + \frac{1}{m})^n \rightarrow \infty \end{array}$$

2) fix n, say n = 100, m is getting larger and larger.

$$\begin{array}{cccc} m = 10 & m = 100 & m = 1000 & m \rightarrow \infty \\ (1 + \frac{1}{m})^n = 1.1^{100} & (1 + \frac{1}{m})^n = 1.01^{100} & (1 + \frac{1}{m})^n = 1.001^{100} & (1 + \frac{1}{m})^n \rightarrow 1 \end{array}$$

How about setting m = n and let them become larger and larger?

$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (1 + \frac{1}{n})^n$  exists? something between 1 and ∞

$$\begin{array}{cccc} n = 10 & n = 100 & n = 1000 & n \rightarrow \infty \\ (1 + \frac{1}{n})^n = 1.1^{10} & (1 + \frac{1}{n})^n = 1.01^{100} & (1 + \frac{1}{n})^n = 1.001^{1000} & (1 + \frac{1}{n})^n \rightarrow 2.71828... \\ \approx 2.59374 & \approx 2.70481 & \approx 2.71692 & \text{limit exists and call it } e. \end{array}$$

Example 2.3.3

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of real numbers defined by  $a_n = (1 + \frac{1}{n})^n$ .

Prove that

1)  $\{a_n\}$  is monotonic increasing;

2)  $\{a_n\}$  is bounded above.

$$\begin{aligned}
a_n &= \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n \\
&= \sum_{r=0}^n C_r^n \frac{1}{n^r} \quad (\text{Totally, } n+1 \text{ terms}) \\
&= 1 + n \cdot \frac{1}{n} + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!} \frac{1}{n^2} + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{3!} \frac{1}{n^3} + \dots + \frac{n(n-1)\dots(n-r+1)}{r!} \frac{1}{n^r} + \dots + \frac{n(n-1)\dots(n-n+1)}{n!} \frac{1}{n^n} \\
&= 1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) + \frac{1}{3!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) + \dots + \frac{1}{r!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{r-1}{n}\right) + \dots + \frac{1}{n!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{n-1}{n}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}
a_{n+1} &= 1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) + \frac{1}{3!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n+1}\right) + \dots + \frac{1}{r!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n+1}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{r-1}{n+1}\right) + \dots + \frac{1}{n!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n+1}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{n-1}{n+1}\right) \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{(n+1)!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n+1}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{n-1}{n+1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{n}{n+1}\right) \quad (\text{Totally, } n+2 \text{ terms})
\end{aligned}$$

Clearly,  $a_{n+1} \geq a_n$ , i.e.  $\{a_n\}$  is monotonic increasing;

$$\begin{aligned}
a_n &= 1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) + \frac{1}{3!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) + \dots + \frac{1}{r!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{r-1}{n}\right) + \dots + \frac{1}{n!} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{n-1}{n}\right) \\
&\leq 1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} + \dots + \frac{1}{r!} + \dots + \frac{1}{n!} \\
&\leq 1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{2^3} + \dots + \frac{1}{2^{r-1}} + \dots + \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} \\
&= 1 + \frac{1 - \frac{1}{2^n}}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} \\
&\leq 1 + \frac{1}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} \\
&= 3
\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \{a_n\}$  is bounded above by 3.

$\therefore$  By theorem 2.3.1,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$  exists.

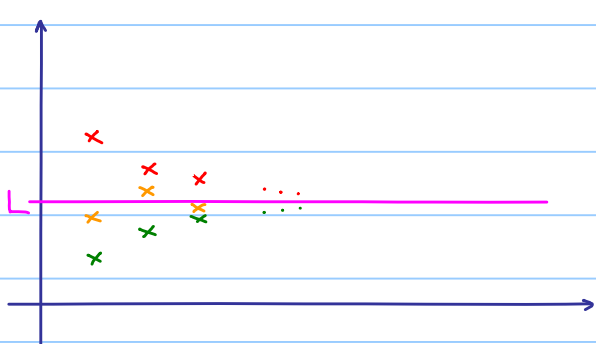
## 2.4 Sandwich Theorem

Theorem 2.4.1 (Sandwich Theorem)

Let  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $\{b_n\}$  and  $\{c_n\}$  be sequences of real numbers.

If  $a_n \leq b_n \leq c_n \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} c_n = L$ , then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = L$ .

Geometrical meaning:



x  $c_n$

x  $b_n$

x  $a_n$

In fact, the result is still true if

$a_n \leq b_n \leq c_n$  for all  $n \geq n_0$ .



Idea: Estimate a sequence  $\{b_n\}$  that we do not understand very well by sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{c_n\}$  that we understand well.

Example 2.4.1

$$\text{Find } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{n+1} + \sqrt{n}}$$

Note:  $0 \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n+1} + \sqrt{n}} \leq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{n}} \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 0 = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2\sqrt{n}} = 0$

By sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{n+1} + \sqrt{n}} = 0$

Example 2.4.2

$$\text{Find } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \sin n$$

Note:  $-\frac{1}{n} \leq \frac{1}{n} \sin n \leq \frac{1}{n} \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} -\frac{1}{n} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} = 0$

By sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \sin n = 0$ .

Exercise 2.4.1

$$\text{Prove that } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n} = 0$$

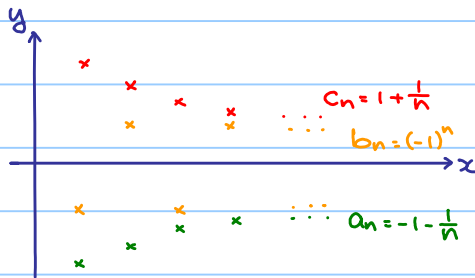
Hint:  $-1 \leq (-1)^n \leq 1$

### Exercise 2.4.2

If  $a_n \leq b_n \leq c_n$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = -1$ ,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} c_n = 1$ ,  
can we conclude that  $-1 \leq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n \leq 1$ ?

No! Consider  $a_n = -1 - \frac{1}{n}$ ,  $b_n = (-1)^n$ ,  $c_n = 1 + \frac{1}{n}$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .

We have  $a_n \leq b_n \leq c_n$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = -1$ ,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} c_n = 1$ ,  
however  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n$  does not exist.



### Theorem 2.4.2

Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence of real numbers.

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0 \iff \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n| = 0.$$

proof:

" $\Leftarrow$ " Suppose that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n| = 0$ .

Note that  $-|a_n| \leq a_n \leq |a_n| \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} -|a_n| = -\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n| = 0$ ,

by the sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$

" $\Rightarrow$ " Suppose that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$ .

$$\text{Then } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n^2 = \left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n\right) \cdot \left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n\right) = 0 \cdot 0 = 0$$

Note that  $|a_n| = \sqrt{a_n^2}$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n| &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt{a_n^2} \\ &\stackrel{(*)}{=} \sqrt{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n^2} \\ &= \sqrt{0} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

(\*) is true because of  $\sqrt{x}$  is

a function that is continuous at 0



By using the above result, we obtain a result concerning a product of two sequences:

### Theorem 2.4.3

If  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  be sequences of real numbers such that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$  and  $\{b_n\}$  is bounded, then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n b_n = 0$ .

proof:

Note •  $-|a_n| \leq a_n \leq |a_n| \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$

•  $\{b_n\}$  is bounded  $\Rightarrow \exists M > 0$  st.  $|b_n| \leq M$  (i.e.  $-M \leq b_n \leq M$ )  $\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$

$\therefore -M|a_n| \leq a_n b_n \leq M|a_n| \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0 &\Leftrightarrow \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n| = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} -M|a_n| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} M|a_n| = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  By the sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n b_n = 0$ .

### Theorem 2.4.4

Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ , we have  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\alpha^n}{n!} = 0$ .

Remark: If  $|\alpha| \leq 1$ , the result is not surprising.

If  $|\alpha| > 1$ ,  $\alpha^n$  grows to infinity (if  $\alpha < -1$ , it is oscillating) as  $n$  goes to  $\infty$ .

However, this theorem says that  $n!$  "grows faster" than  $\alpha^n$

proof:

Choose  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that  $|\alpha| < k$  (i.e.  $\frac{|\alpha|}{k} < 1$ )

When  $n > k$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \leq \left| \frac{\alpha^n}{n!} \right| &= \underbrace{\left( \frac{|\alpha|}{1} \frac{|\alpha|}{2} \frac{|\alpha|}{3} \dots \frac{|\alpha|}{k-1} \right)}_{\leq M} \cdot \left( \frac{|\alpha|}{k} \frac{|\alpha|}{k-1} \dots \frac{|\alpha|}{n} \right) \\ &\leq M \left( \frac{|\alpha|}{k} \right)^{n-k+1} \end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{|\alpha|}{k} < 1 \Rightarrow \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \frac{|\alpha|}{k} \right)^{n-k+1} = 0 \Rightarrow \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} M \left( \frac{|\alpha|}{k} \right)^{n-k+1} = 0$$

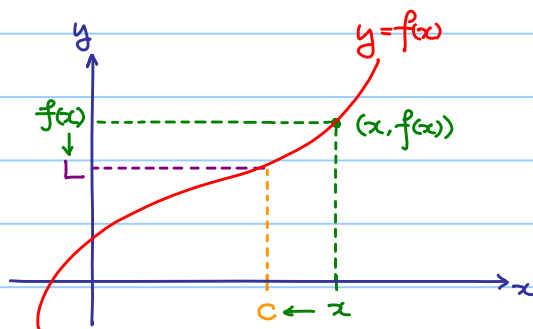
$\therefore$  By the sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{\alpha^n}{n!} \right| = 0 \Leftrightarrow \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\alpha^n}{n!} = 0$

## §3 Limits of Functions

### 3.1 Definition

Definition 3.1.1 (Informal)

If  $f(x)$  gets closer and closer to a real number  $L$  as  $x$  gets closer and closer<sup>†</sup> to  $c$  from both sides, then  $L$  is called the limit of  $f(x)$  at  $c$ , and we write  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L$ .



† Note: a little bit misleading!

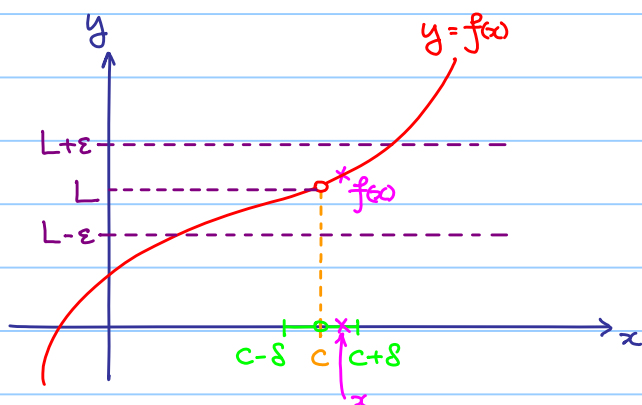
$f(x)$  may NOT equal to  $L$ , even it may be undefined!

Definition 3.1.2

Let  $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ ,  $c$  be a cluster point of  $A$  and  $f: A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function

$L \in \mathbb{R}$  is said to be the limit of  $f$  at the point  $c$  if

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0, \exists \delta > 0 \text{ s.t. } |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon \quad \forall x \in A \text{ with } 0 < |x - c| < \delta$$



Meaning: No matter how small  $\varepsilon$  is given,

we can always find  $\delta > 0$  s.t. if  $x$  is a point with  $0 < \text{dist}(x, c) < \delta$

then  $f(x)$  lies in the  $\varepsilon$ -tunnel ( $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of  $L$ )

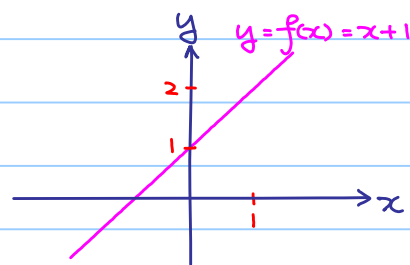
i.e.  $x \neq c$



### Example 3.1.1

If  $f(x) = x + 1$ , find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x)$ .

$x$	0.9	0.99	0.999	1	1.001	1.01	1.1
$f(x)$	1.9	1.99	1.999	2	2.001	2.01	2.1



$f(x)$  tends to 2 as  $x$  tends to 1.

We write  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x) = 2$ .

Remarks:

1)  $\dagger$  The table only gives an intuitive idea, but NOT a rigorous proof!

2) **Always Remember:**

Do NOT regard finding limit as putting  $x=1$  into  $f(x)$  and getting  $f(1)=2$ !

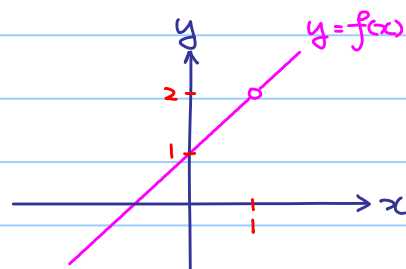
### Example 3.1.2

Let  $f(x)$  be a function defined by  $f(x) = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1}$ ,  $x \neq 1$ .

We can rewrite  $f$  as the following:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1 & \text{if } x \neq 1 \\ \text{undefined} & \text{if } x = 1 \end{cases}$$

$x$	0.9	0.99	0.999	1	1.001	1.01	1.1
$f(x)$	1.9	1.99	1.999	undefined	2.001	2.01	2.1




$f(x)$  tends to 2 as  $x$  tends to 1.

(But, we do NOT care what happens when  $x=1$ !)

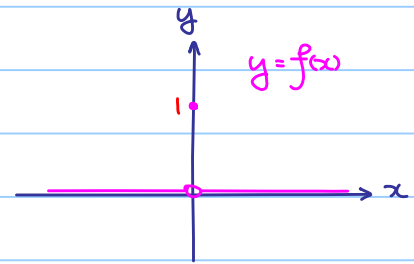
We still have  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x) = 2$ .

**Compare with the previous example!**

 Idea: When  $x$  is "near" 1, both  $x^2 - 1$  and  $x - 1$  are small, but the quotient of them is not small!

### Example 3.1.3

$$\text{Let } f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$$



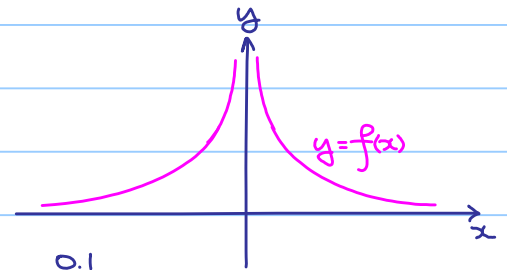
$x$	-0.1	-0.01	-0.001	0	0.001	0.01	0.1
$f(x)$	0	0	0	1	0	0	0

Do NOT care!

$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = 0$  which does NOT equal to  $f(0) = 1$ .

### Example 3.1.4

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$ .



$x$	-0.1	-0.01	-0.001	0	0.001	0.01	0.1
$f(x)$	$10^2$	$10^4$	$10^6$	undefined	$10^6$	$10^4$	$10^2$

$f(x)$  tends to  $+\infty$  (NOT a real number) as  $x$  tends to 0.

$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x)$  does NOT exist.

(But some still write  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = +\infty$  or say  $f(x)$  diverges to  $+\infty$  as  $x$  tends to 0)

### Theorem 3.1.1

- 1) If  $k$  is a constant, then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} k = k$  regarded as constant function  $f(x) = k$ .
- 2)  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} x = c$ .

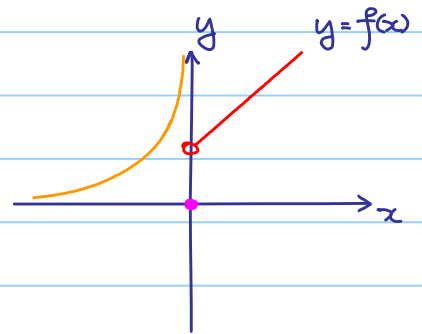
### Definition 3.1.3 (Informal)

If  $f(x)$  gets closer and closer to a real number  $L$  as  $x$  gets closer and closer to  $c$  from the right (left) hand side, then  $L$  is called the right (left) hand limit of  $f(x)$  at  $c$ .

We denote it by  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} f(x) = L$  ( $\lim_{x \rightarrow c^-} f(x) = L$ ).

### Example 3.1.5

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1 & \text{if } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \frac{1}{x^2} & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$



$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} x+1 = 1$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{1}{x^2} \quad (\text{does NOT exist})$$

$$f(0) = 0$$

Remark:

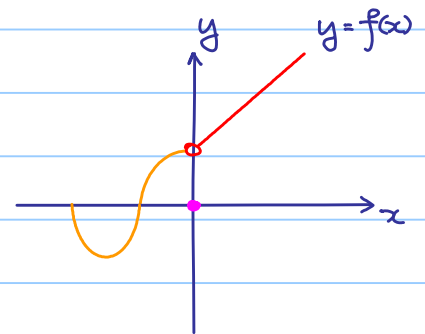
Right hand limit and left hand limit of a function at a point are **NOT** necessary to be the same!

### Theorem 3.1.2

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L \iff \lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c^-} f(x) = L$$

### Example 3.1.6

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1 & \text{if } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \cos x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$



$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} x+1 = 1$$

↑ (x > 0)

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} \cos x = 1$$

↑ (x < 0)

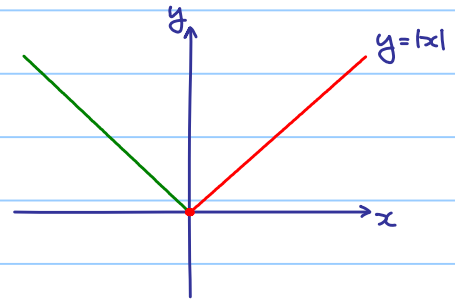
$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f(x) = 1 \implies \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) \text{ exists and } \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = 1$$

Remark: It is nothing related to  $f(0) = 0$ .

Example 3.1.7

Let  $f(x) = |x|$

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$



$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} x = 0$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} -x = 0$$

Don't skip!

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f(x) = 0 \text{ and so } \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} |x| = 0.$$

Remark: We cannot say  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x$  or  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} -x$

since when we find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x)$ , we need to consider the neighborhood of 0.

However,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 2} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} x = 2$  since  $f(x) = x$  in a neighborhood of 2.

### 3.2 Algebraic Properties of Limits

Theorem 3.2.1

If both  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x)$  exist (Very important assumption!), then

$$(1) \lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) + g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) + \lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x)$$

$$(2) \lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) - g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) - \lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x)$$

$$(3) \lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) \lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x)$$

$$(4) \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)}{\lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x)} \text{ if } \lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x) \neq 0$$

Example 3.2.1

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 3x^2 - 5$ .

Logically:

$$\textcircled{1} \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} x = 2, \text{ so } \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} x^2 = \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} (x \cdot x) \stackrel{\text{By (3)}}{=} \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} x \cdot \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} x = 2 \cdot 2 = 4$$

$$\textcircled{2} \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 3 = 3, \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} x^2 = 4, \text{ so } \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 3x^2 \stackrel{\text{By (3)}}{=} \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 3 \cdot \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} x^2 = 3 \cdot 4 = 12$$

$$\textcircled{3} \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 3x^2 = 12, \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 5 = 5, \text{ so } \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 3x^2 - 5 \stackrel{\text{By (2)}}{=} \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 3x^2 - \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 5 = 12 - 5 = 7$$

But what we write:

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 3x^2 - 5 &= 3(\lim_{x \rightarrow 2} x)^2 - 5 \\ &= 3 \cdot 2^2 - 5 \\ &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

### Example 3.2.2

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{3x^2 - 8}{x - 2}$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{3x^2 - 8}{x - 2} = \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} 3x^2 - 8}{\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} x - 2} = \frac{3(\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} x)^2 - 8}{(\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} x) - 2} = \frac{3 \cdot 1^2 - 8}{1 - 2} = 5$$

Caution!

It seems that it makes no difference by putting  $x=1$ , and then

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{3x^2 - 8}{x - 2} = \frac{3 \cdot 1^2 - 8}{1 - 2} = 5$$

But, think carefully! Let  $f(x) = \frac{3x^2 - 8}{x - 2}$ , how do you know  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x) = f(1)$ ?

Things will become clear when we discuss continuity of functions!

### Example 3.2.3

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 - 3x + 2}$

Note:  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} x^2 - 3x + 2 = 0$ , so we cannot use (4).

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 - 3x + 2} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{(x-1)(x+1)}{(x-1)(x-2)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{x+1}{x-2} \stackrel{(4)}{=} \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} x+1}{\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} x-2} = \frac{2}{-1} = -2$$

$\because x \neq 1$

$\therefore x-1 \neq 0$  and division can be done!

### Example 3.2.4

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = \frac{\sqrt{x} - 1}{x - 1}$ . Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x)$ .

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{\sqrt{x} - 1}{x - 1} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{\sqrt{x} - 1}{x - 1} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{x} + 1}{\sqrt{x} + 1} \quad (\text{Something like rationalization})$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{x - 1}{(x - 1)(\sqrt{x} + 1)}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x} + 1}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}$$

### Example 3.2.5

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x \cdot \frac{1}{x^2} \stackrel{(*)}{=} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x \cdot \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{x^2} = 0 \cdot \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{x^2} = 0 \quad \text{Anything wrong?}$$

$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{x^2}$  does NOT exist, so we cannot use (3) at (\*).

### Example 3.2.6

Suppose  $f(0) = 1$ ,  $g(0) = 2$ ,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x)}{x} = 3$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{g(x)}{x} = 5$ . Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x)$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \stackrel{(*)}{=} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\frac{f(x)}{x}}{\frac{g(x)}{x}} = \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x)}{x}}{\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{g(x)}{x}} = \frac{3}{5}$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) \stackrel{(*)}{=} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \left( \frac{f(x)}{x} \cdot x \right) = \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x)}{x} \right) \cdot \left( \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x \right) = 3 \cdot 0 = 0 \quad \text{(*) Note } x \neq 0$$

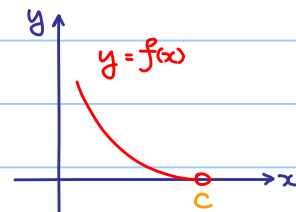
Remark: Nothing related to  $f(0) = 1$ ,  $g(0) = 2$ !

### Theorem 3.2.2

If  $f(x) \geq 0$  for  $x < c$  ( $x > c$ ) and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)$  ( $\lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} f(x)$ ) exists, then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) \geq 0$  ( $\lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} f(x) \geq 0$ ).

Combine them together.

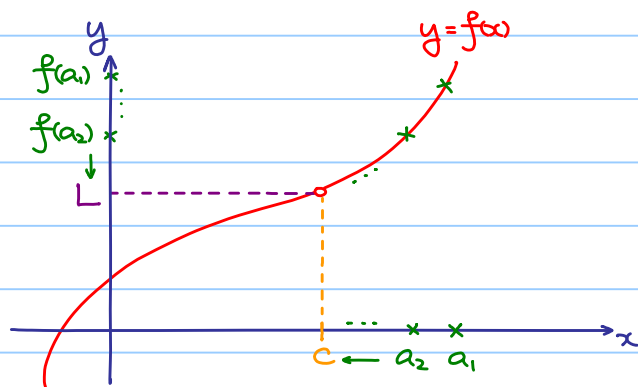
If  $f(x) \geq 0$  for  $x \neq c$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)$  exists, then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) \geq 0$ .



## 3.3 Relation Between Limits of Sequences and Functions

### Theorem 3.3.1

$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L \Leftrightarrow \forall$  sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with  $a_n \neq c \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = c$ , we have  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n) = L$ .



In fact, if we want to show  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L$ , it is quite impossible to check infinitely many sequences. This statement is useful in reverse direction:

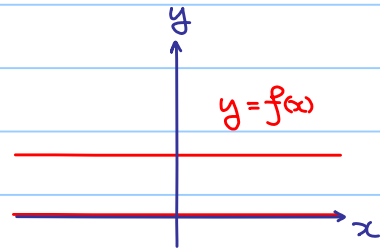
- 1) If  $\exists \{a_n\}$  with  $a_n \neq c \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  s.t.  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = c$ , but  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n)$  does NOT exist, then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)$  does NOT exist.
- 2) If  $\exists \{a_n\}, \{b_n\}$  with  $a_n, b_n \neq c \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  s.t.  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = c$ , but  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n) \neq \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(b_n)$ , then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)$  does NOT exist.



### Example 3.3.1

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \in \mathbb{Q} \\ 0 & \text{if } x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Q} \end{cases}$$



It seems the graph consists of two straight lines, but in fact infinitely many holes are there.

Consider sequences  $\{a_n\}, \{b_n\}$  defined by

$$a_n = \frac{1}{n} \in \mathbb{Q}, \quad b_n = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{n} \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Q}$$

$$\text{Then } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = 0, \text{ but } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 1 = 1$$

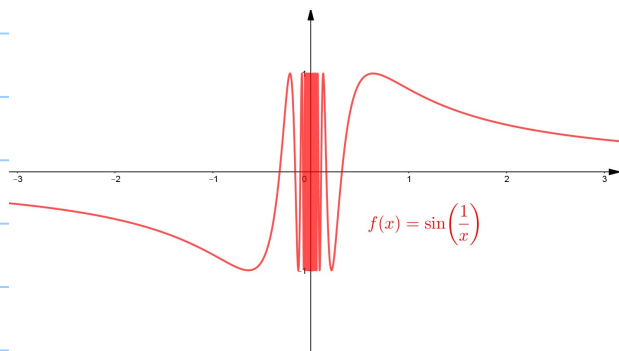
$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(b_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 0 = 0$$

$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x)$  does NOT exist.

Actually, with little modification, we can show  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)$  does NOT exist  $\forall c \in \mathbb{R}$ .

### Example 3.3.2

Let  $f(x) = \sin \frac{1}{x}$ , for  $x \neq 0$ . Show that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x)$  does NOT exist.



$$\text{Solve } f(x) = 1$$

$$\sin \frac{1}{x} = 1$$

$$\frac{1}{x} = 2n\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

$$x = \frac{1}{(2n + \frac{1}{2})\pi}$$

$$f(x) = -1$$

$$\sin \frac{1}{x} = -1$$

$$\frac{1}{x} = 2n\pi + \frac{3\pi}{2}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

$$x = \frac{1}{(2n + \frac{3}{2})\pi}$$

Consider sequences  $\{a_n\}, \{b_n\}$  defined by

$$a_n = \frac{1}{(2n + \frac{1}{2})\pi}, \quad b_n = \frac{1}{(2n + \frac{3}{2})\pi} \quad \text{for } n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$$

$$\text{Then } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = 0, \text{ but } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 1 = 1, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(b_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} -1 = -1.$$

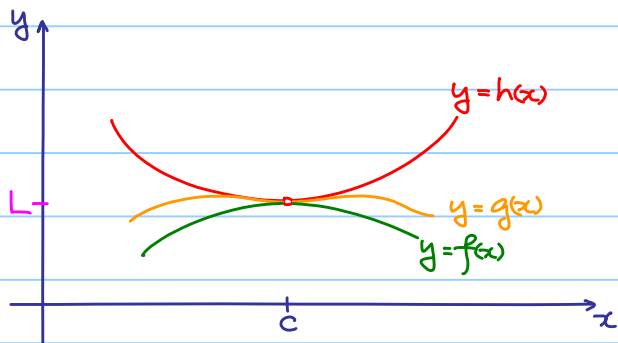
$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x)$  does NOT exist.

### 3.4 Sandwich Theorem for Functions

Theorem 3.4.1

If  $f(x) \leq g(x) \leq h(x) \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{c\}$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} h(x) = L$ , then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x) = L$

Geometrical meaning:



In fact, the result is still true if  $f(x) \leq g(x) \leq h(x)$  holds in an open interval containing  $c$  but possibly except  $c$

Example 3.4.1

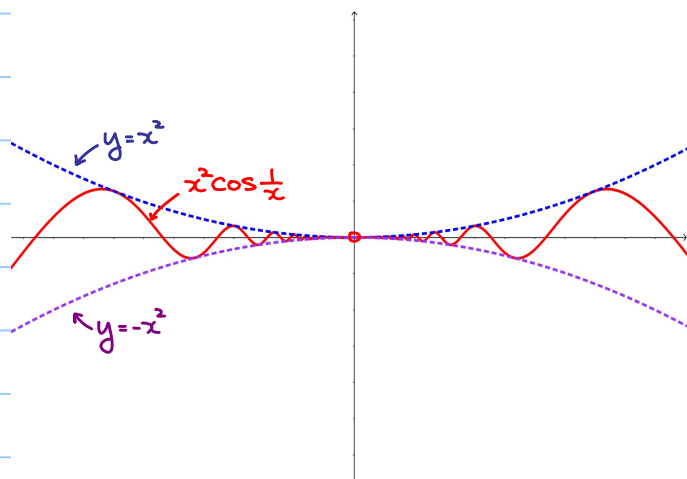
Prove that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x^2 \cos \frac{1}{x} = 0$

Note that:  $-1 \leq \cos \frac{1}{x} \leq 1$  for  $x \neq 0$

$$-x^2 \leq x^2 \cos \frac{1}{x} \leq x^2$$

and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} -x^2 = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x^2 = 0$

By sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x^2 \cos^2 \frac{1}{x} = 0$ .



Theorem 3.4.2

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = 0 \iff \lim_{x \rightarrow c} |f(x)| = 0$$

proof:

" $\Leftarrow$ " Suppose that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} |f(x)| = 0$

Note that  $-|f(x)| \leq f(x) \leq |f(x)| \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{c\}$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} -|f(x)| = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} |f(x)| = 0$

by the sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = 0$

" $\Rightarrow$ " Suppose that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = 0$ .

$$\text{Then } \lim_{x \rightarrow c} [f(x)]^2 = (\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)) \cdot (\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x)) = 0 \cdot 0 = 0$$

Note that  $|f(x)| = \sqrt{[f(x)]^2}$

$$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow c} |f(x)| = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \sqrt{[f(x)]^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{\lim_{x \rightarrow c} [f(x)]^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{0}$$

$$= 0$$

(\*) is true because of  $\sqrt{x}$  is

a function that is continuous at 0

### Example 3.4.2

By considering the previous theorem with  $f(x) = x$ , we have  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x = 0 \Leftrightarrow \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} |x| = 0$

Compare with example 3.1.7.

### Example 3.4.3

Prove that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x \cos \frac{1}{x} = 0$

Note that  $-1 \leq \cos \frac{1}{x} \leq 1 \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$

$$-|x| \leq x \leq |x| \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$$

$$\therefore -|x| \leq x \cos \frac{1}{x} \leq |x| \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$$

$$\text{Also } \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} -|x| = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} |x| = 0,$$

by the sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x \cos \frac{1}{x} = 0$

### Remark:

Sandwich theorem can be generalized to left and right hand limit.

Let  $f, g, h: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be functions and  $c \in \mathbb{R}$

If  $f(x) \leq g(x) \leq h(x)$  for all  $x < c$  ( $x > c$ ) and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c^-} h(x) = L$  ( $\lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} h(x) = L$ )

then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c^-} g(x) = L$  ( $\lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} g(x) = L$ ).

### Exercise 3.4.1

Prove that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} (x^2 - 1) \sin\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{x} - 1}\right) = 0$

### Theorem 3.4.3

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$$

💡 Idea: When  $x$  becomes small (but not zero), both  $\sin x$  and  $x$  are small, but the quotient of them is not small!

proof.

1) Consider  $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , we have

Area of  $\triangle OAC <$  Area of sector  $OAC <$  Area of  $\triangle OAB$

$$\frac{1}{2}r^2 \sin x < \frac{1}{2}r^2 x < \frac{1}{2}r^2 \tan x$$

$$\underbrace{\sin x < x < \tan x}$$

$$\frac{\sin x}{x} < 1 \quad \cos x < \frac{\sin x}{x}$$

$$\therefore \cos x < \frac{\sin x}{x} < 1 \quad \text{for } 0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2},$$

Also,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \cos x = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} 1 = 1$ , therefore by the sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$ .

2) Consider  $-\frac{\pi}{2} < x < 0$ , we have

Let  $y = -x$ , then  $0 < y < \frac{\pi}{2}$ , so

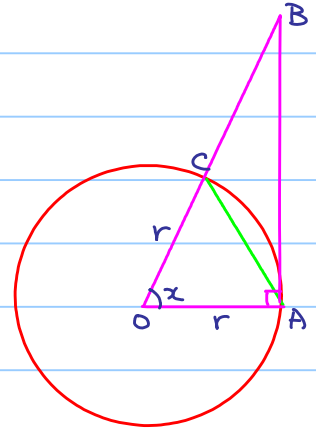
$$\cos y < \frac{\sin y}{y} < 1$$

$$\cos(-x) < \frac{\sin(-x)}{-x} < 1$$

$$\therefore \cos x < \frac{\sin x}{x} < 1 \quad \text{for } -\frac{\pi}{2} < x < 0.$$

Also,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} \cos x = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} 1 = 1$ , therefore by the sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$ .

$\therefore$  By (1) and (2),  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\sin x}{x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$ , therefore  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$ .



### Example 3.4.4

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin 3x}{2x}$ .

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin 3x}{2x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin 3x}{3x} \cdot \frac{3}{2} = 1 \cdot \frac{3}{2} = \frac{3}{2}$$

### Example 3.4.5

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos ax - \cos bx}{x^2}$

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos ax - \cos bx}{x^2} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{2 \sin \frac{a+b}{2} x \sin \frac{b-a}{2} x}{x^2} \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} 2 \left( \frac{a+b}{2} \right) \left( \frac{b-a}{2} \right) \frac{\sin \frac{a+b}{2} x}{\frac{a+b}{2} x} \frac{\sin \frac{b-a}{2} x}{\frac{b-a}{2} x} \\ &= \frac{b^2 - a^2}{2} \end{aligned}$$

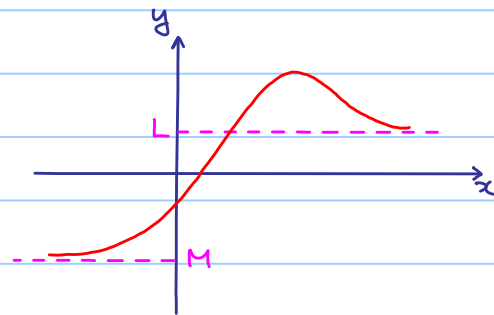
### 3.5 Limits at Infinity

Definition 3.5.1 (Informal)

If  $f(x)$  gets closer and closer to a real number  $L$  as  $x$  gets bigger and bigger (as  $x$  goes to  $+\infty$ ), then  $L$  is called the limit of  $f(x)$  at  $+\infty$ . We write  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = L$ .  
(Similar definition for  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x)$ )

From the graph, we have

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = L \quad \text{but} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x) = M.$$



$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x)$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x)$  are **NOT** necessary to be the same!

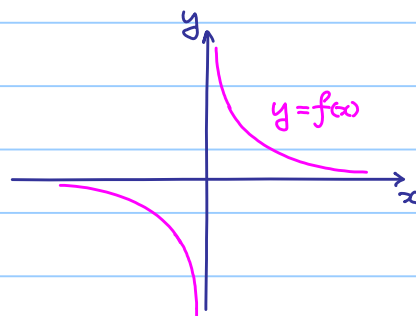
However if  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x) = L$ , some simply write  $\lim_{x \rightarrow \pm\infty} f(x) = L$ .

Example 3.5.1

$$\text{Let } f(x) = \frac{1}{x}, \quad x \neq 0.$$

$$\text{Then } \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x) = 0,$$

$$\text{or simply write } \lim_{x \rightarrow \pm\infty} f(x) = 0$$



Theorem 3.5.1

$$1) \text{ If } k > 0, \text{ then } \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{1}{x^k} = 0$$

$$2) \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right)^x = e$$

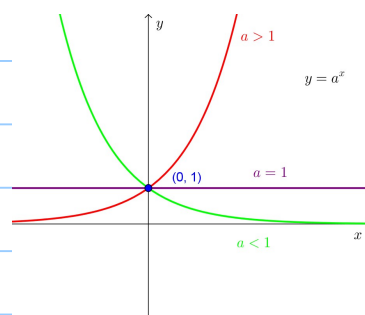
(NOT surprising as  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n = e$ )

Theorem 3.5.2

$$\text{If } a > 1, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} a^x = 0$$

$$\text{If } 1 > a > 0, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} a^x = 0$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \pm\infty} 1^x = 1$$



### 3.6 Algebraic Properties of Limits at Infinity

#### Theorem 3.6.1

If both  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x)$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} g(x)$  exist (Very important assumption!), then

$$(1) \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) + g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) + \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} g(x)$$

$$(2) \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) - g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) - \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} g(x)$$

$$(3) \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x)g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} g(x)$$

$$(4) \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x)}{\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} g(x)} \quad \text{if } \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} g(x) \neq 0$$

Similar results hold for limits at  $-\infty$ .

#### Example 3.6.1

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{3x^2}{x^2+x+1}$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{3x^2}{x^2+x+1}$$

~~$\frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} 3x^2}{\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} x^2+x+1}$~~  Both limits does NOT exist.

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{3}{1 + \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x^2}}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{3}{1+0+0}$$

$$= 3$$

#### Example 3.6.2

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{2x+1}{3x^2-2x+1}$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{2x+1}{3x^2-2x+1}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{\frac{2}{x} + \frac{1}{x^2}}{3 - \frac{2}{x} + \frac{1}{x^2}}$$

$$= \frac{0+0}{3+0+0}$$

$$= 0$$

Conclusion:

If  $p(x)$  and  $q(x)$  are polynomials

$$p(x) = a_m x^m + a_{m-1} x^{m-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \quad \text{with } a_m \neq 0 \quad (\text{i.e. } \deg p(x) = m)$$

$$q(x) = b_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + b_1 x + b_0 \quad \text{with } b_n \neq 0 \quad (\text{i.e. } \deg q(x) = n)$$

then

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{p(x)}{q(x)} = \begin{cases} +\infty / -\infty & \text{if } m > n \\ \frac{a_m}{b_n} & \text{if } m = n \\ 0 & \text{if } m < n \end{cases}$$

Similar result as the case in limits of sequences!

Example 3.6.3

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{x}{\sqrt{4x^2+1}}$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{x}{\sqrt{4x^2+1}} \quad \begin{array}{l} \leftarrow \text{deg } 1 \\ \leftarrow \text{roughly, deg } 1 \end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \text{limit should exist!}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{1}{\frac{1}{x} \sqrt{4x^2+1}}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{1}{-\sqrt{\frac{1}{x^2}} \cdot \sqrt{4x^2+1}} \quad (\text{Caution: } x < 0 \Rightarrow \frac{1}{x} = -\sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)^2} = -\sqrt{\frac{1}{x^2}})$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} -\frac{1}{\sqrt{4 + \frac{1}{x^2}}}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}$$

Following this idea, we are going to compare exponential functions and polynomials.

Theorem 3.6.2

1)  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} x^k e^{-x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{x^k}{e^x} = 0$ , for any  $k > 0$ .

2)  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} p(x) e^{-x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{p(x)}{e^x} = 0$ , for any polynomial  $p(x)$ .

Roughly speaking: As  $x \rightarrow +\infty$ ,  $e^x$  grows "faster" than any polynomial

Proof can be done when L'Hôpital's rule is covered.

Example 3.6.4

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{e^x - e^{-x}}$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{e^x - e^{-x}}$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{e^x - e^{-x}} \quad \text{dominating terms}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{1 + e^{-2x}}{1 - e^{-2x}} \\ &= \frac{1 + 0}{1 - 0} \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{e^x - e^{-x}} \quad \text{dominating terms}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{e^{2x} + 1}{e^{2x} - 1} \\ &= \frac{0 + 1}{0 - 1} \\ &= -1 \end{aligned}$$



Idea: Taking quotient of the dominating term.

### 3.7 Limits Involving e

Example 3.7.1

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2x-1}\right)^x$

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2x-1}\right)^x &= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2x-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(2x-1) + \frac{1}{2}} \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \left[\left(1 + \frac{1}{2x-1}\right)^{2x-1}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \cdot \left(1 + \frac{1}{2x-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= e^{\frac{1}{2}} \cdot 1 \\ &= e^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

Example 3.7.2

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right)^x$

Let  $y = -x$ , as  $x \rightarrow -\infty$ ,  $y \rightarrow +\infty$

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right)^x &= \lim_{y \rightarrow +\infty} \left(1 - \frac{1}{y}\right)^{-y} \\ &= \lim_{y \rightarrow +\infty} \left(\frac{y}{y-1}\right)^y \\ &= \lim_{y \rightarrow +\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{y-1}\right)^{y-1} \cdot \left(1 + \frac{1}{y-1}\right) \\ &= e \cdot 1 \\ &= e \end{aligned}$$

Remark: From the above example, we know  $\lim_{x \rightarrow \pm\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right)^x = e$ .




### Example 3.7.3

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} (1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}}$ .

Let  $y = \frac{1}{x}$ , as  $x \rightarrow 0$ ,  $y \rightarrow \pm\infty$  (Not only  $+\infty$ , but also  $-\infty$ )

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} (1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}} = \lim_{y \rightarrow \pm\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{y}\right)^y = e$$

Next, consider  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{x}$

 Idea: When  $x$  becomes small (but not zero), both  $e^x - 1$  and  $x$  are small, but the quotient of them is not small!

### Theorem 3.7.1

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{x} = 1.$$

Cheating:  $e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots}{x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \left(1 + \frac{x}{2!} + \frac{x^2}{3!} + \dots\right) \stackrel{(*)}{=} 1$$

(\*) is cheating since we are summing up infinitely many small terms, so algebraic properties of limits (theorem 3.2.1) cannot be applied.

### Exercise 3.7.1

Use a calculator and fill the following table to convince yourself that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{x} = 1$ .

$x$	-0.1	-0.01	-0.001	0	0.001	0.01	0.1
$\frac{e^x - 1}{x}$				undefined			

### Example 3.7.2

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^{3x} - 1}{2x}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^{3x} - 1}{2x} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^{3x} - 1}{3x} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \\ &= \left(\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^{3x} - 1}{3x}\right) \cdot \left(\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{3}{2}\right) \\ &= 1 \cdot \frac{3}{2} \\ &= \frac{3}{2} \end{aligned}$$

### 3.8 Sandwich Theorem at Infinity

Theorem 3.8.1

Let  $f, g, h: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be functions.

If  $f(x) \leq g(x) \leq h(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  (actually:  $[a, +\infty)$  is sufficient)

and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} h(x) = L$ , then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} g(x) = L$ .

Geometrical meaning:



Similar result holds for limits at  $-\infty$

Example 3.8.1

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} e^{-x} \sin x$

Since  $-1 \leq \sin x \leq 1$  and  $e^{-x} > 0$

$$-e^{-x} \leq e^{-x} \sin x \leq e^{-x}$$

Note:  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} -e^{-x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} e^{-x} = 0$ .

By the sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} e^{-x} \sin x = 0$ .

Exercise 3.8.1

Show that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 0$ .

(Don't mix up with  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$ )

## §4 Continuity

### 4.1 Definition

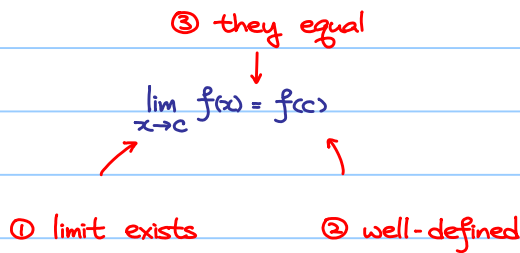
Definition 4.1.1

Let  $c \in \mathbb{A} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  and let  $f: \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function.

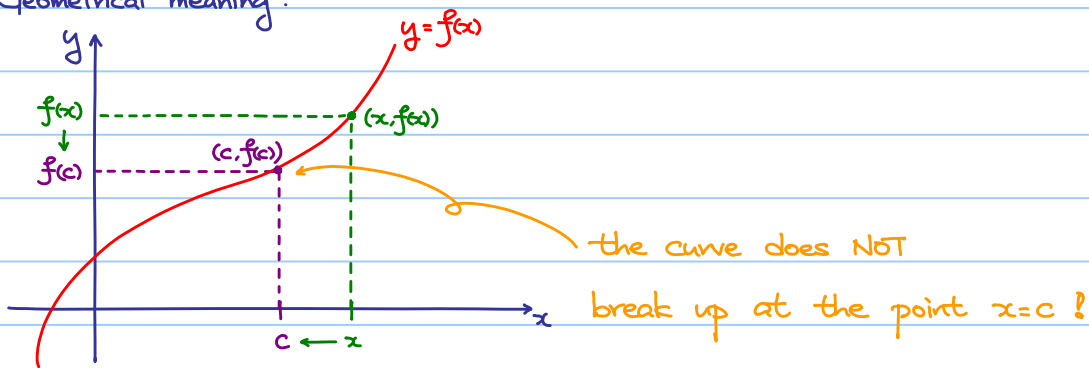
A function  $f(x)$  is said to be continuous at  $x=c$  if  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = f(c)$ .



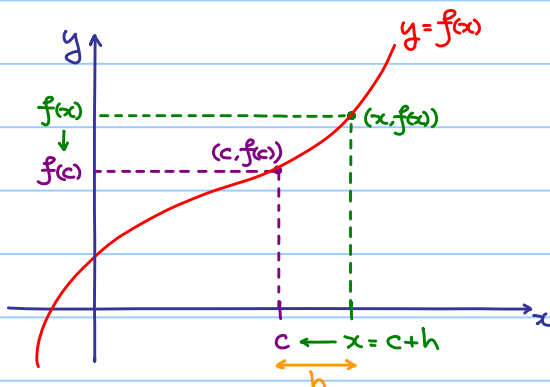
Idea:



Geometrical meaning:



Furthermore, if a function  $f: \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is continuous at every point in  $\mathbb{A}$ , then  $f$  is said to be continuous on  $\mathbb{A}$ .



Let  $h = x - c$ , i.e.  $x = c + h$  (Remark: When  $x < c$ , we have  $h < 0$ .)

When  $x$  tends to  $c$ ,  $h$  tends to 0.

Therefore, we have another formulation:

A function  $f(x)$  is said to be continuous at  $x=c$  if  $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f(c+h) = f(c)$ .

## 4.2 Examples

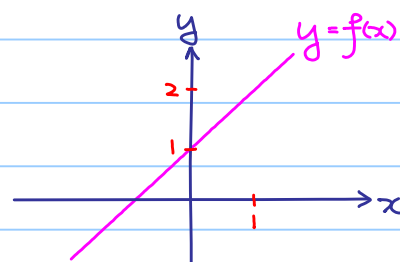
### Example 4.2.1

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function defined by  $f(x) = x + 1$ .

We have : ①  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} x + 1 = 2$

②  $f(1) = (1) + 1 = 2$

$\therefore f$  is continuous at  $x = 1$ .



### Example 4.2.2

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{\sin x}{x} & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ a & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$$

i.e.  $x \neq 0$

We have  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$

$\therefore f$  is continuous at  $x = 0 \Leftrightarrow \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = f(0)$ , i.e.  $a = 1$

Recall:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow c^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} f(x) = L$$

Rewrite:

A function  $f(x)$  is said to be continuous at  $x = c$  if  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} f(x) = f(c)$

### Example 4.2.3

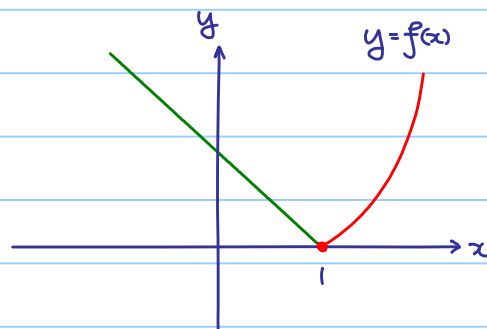
$$\text{If } f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 1 & \text{if } x \geq 1 \\ 1 - x & \text{if } x < 1 \end{cases}$$

①  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} x^2 - 1 = 0$

②  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} 1 - x = 0$

③  $f(1) = 1^2 - 1 = 0$

$\therefore f$  is continuous at  $x = 1$ .



### Example 4.2.4

Absolute Value :  $|x| = \sqrt{x^2}$

For example:

$$|3| = \sqrt{3^2} = \sqrt{9} = 3$$

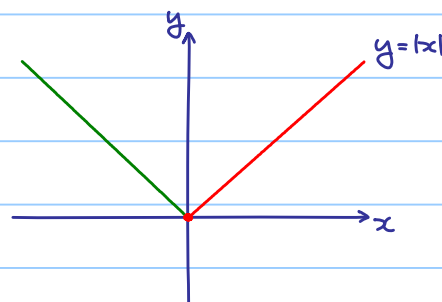
$$|0| = \sqrt{0^2} = \sqrt{0} = 0$$

$$|-3| = \sqrt{(-3)^2} = \sqrt{9} = 3$$

(Simply speaking: throw away the negative sign)

Rewrite  $|x|$  as a piecewise defined function:

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$



We have :

$$\textcircled{1} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} x = 0$$

$$\textcircled{2} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} -x = 0$$

$$\textcircled{3} f(0) = 0$$

$\therefore |x|$  is continuous at  $x=0$

### Exercise 4.2.1

Show that  $f(x)=|x|$  is a continuous function.

Hint: Show that  $f(x)$  is continuous

(i) for  $x > 0$  ; (ii) at  $x=0$  ; (iii) for  $x < 0$  .

### Theorem 4.2.1

- If  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  are continuous at  $x=c$ , then  $f(x) \pm g(x)$ ,  $f(x)g(x)$ ,  $\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$  ( $g(c) \neq 0$ ) are continuous at  $x=c$  as well.
- Polynomial functions and exponential functions are continuous everywhere.
- Trigonometric functions and logarithmic functions are continuous at every point where they are defined.
- If  $g(x)$  is continuous at  $x=c$  and  $f(x)$  is continuous at  $x=g(c)$ , then  $f(g(x))$  is continuous at  $x=c$ .

(That's why we usually have  $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = f(c)$  as we usually looking at continuous functions.)

Example 4.2.5

Let  $f(x) = \frac{2x^2+3}{x^2-3x+2}$  quotient of two polynomials (continuous functions)

$$= \frac{2x^2+3}{(x-2)(x-1)}$$

the denominator is nonzero when  $x \neq 1$  or  $2$ .

$\therefore f(x)$  is continuous at  $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{1, 2\}$

Example 4.2.6

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function such that

(i)  $f$  is continuous at  $0$ .

(ii)  $f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y)$  for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Show that :

a)  $f(0) = 0$ ;

b)  $f$  is continuous everywhere.

proof:

a) Putting  $x = y = 0$ ,

$$f(0+0) = f(0) + f(0)$$

$$f(0) = 2f(0)$$

$$f(0) = 0$$

b)  $f$  is continuous at  $0 \Rightarrow \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f(0+h) = f(0)$   
 $\Rightarrow \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f(h) = f(0) = 0$

Let  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f(x_0+h) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [f(x_0) + f(h)] && \text{(Property of } f) \\ &= f(x_0) + \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} f(h) \\ &= f(x_0) \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f$  is continuous everywhere.

### 4.3 Sequential Criterion for Continuity

Theorem 4.3.1

A function  $f$  is continuous at  $x=c$  if and only if for every sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with  $a_n \neq c \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = c$ , we have  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n) = f(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n) = f(c)$ .

Example 4.3.1

Think : Find  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt{\frac{n^2+1}{4n^2+3}}$

How did we do ?

$$\textcircled{1} \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n^2+1}{4n^2+3} = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$\textcircled{2} \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt{\frac{n^2+1}{4n^2+3}} \stackrel{(*)}{=} \sqrt{\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n^2+1}{4n^2+3}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}} = \frac{1}{2}$$

so in general,  $(*)$  means  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n) = f(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n)$ , why it is true ?

Consider  $a_n = \frac{n^2+1}{4n^2+3}$ , we have  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \frac{1}{4}$

Also, we know  $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$  is continuous at  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,

$$\therefore \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n) = f(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n)$$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt{\frac{n^2+1}{4n^2+3}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Example 4.3.2

Consider

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x=0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x \neq 0 \end{cases}, \text{ and } a_n = \frac{1}{n}.$$

Note :  $f$  is NOT continuous at  $x=0$ .

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f\left(\frac{1}{n}\right) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 0 = 0$$

$$f(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n) = f(0) = 1$$

$$\therefore \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(a_n) \neq f(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n)$$

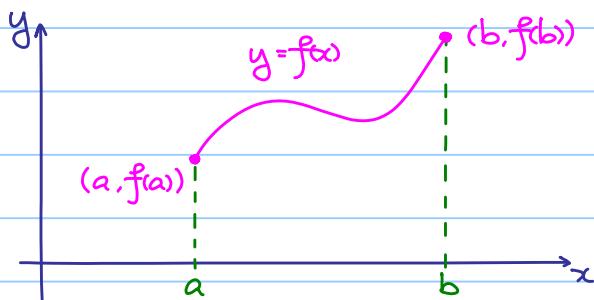
## 4.4 Continuity on $[a, b]$

Definition 4.4.1

Let  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

$f$  is said to be continuous at  $x=a$  if  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x) = f(a)$ ;

$f$  is said to be continuous at  $x=b$  if  $\lim_{x \rightarrow b^-} f(x) = f(b)$ .



(We cannot talk about  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x)$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow b^+} f(x)$ !)

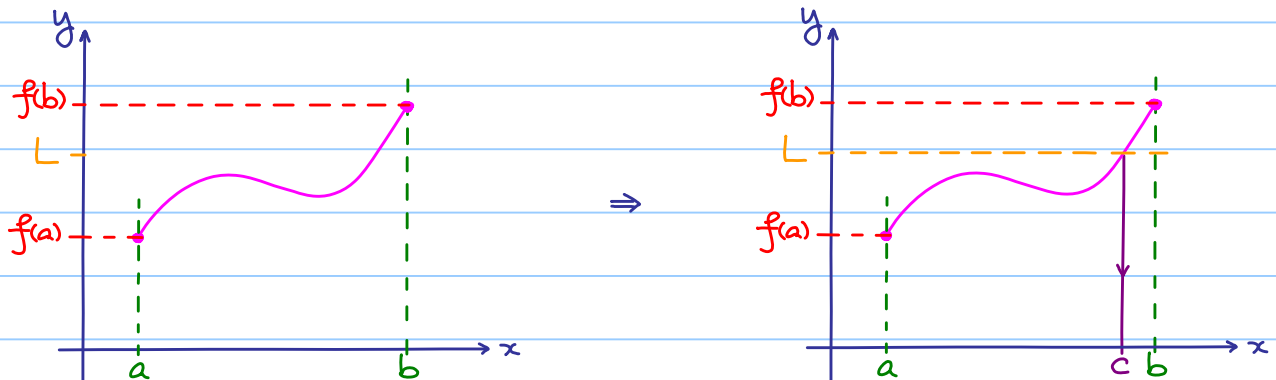
Furthermore, if a function  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is continuous at every point  $x \in [a, b]$ , then  $f$  is said to be continuous on  $[a, b]$ .

Theorem 4.4.1 (Intermediate Value Theorem)

Suppose that  $f$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$  and  $f(a) < f(b)$ .

Furthermore, if  $L \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $f(a) < L < f(b)$ .

then there exists (at least one)  $c \in (a, b)$  such that  $f(c) = L$ .



Similar result holds for  $f(a) > L > f(b)$ . (What is the picture?)



Example 4.4.1

Let  $f(x) = x^2$

①  $f(1) = 1 < 2 < 4 = f(2)$

②  $f$  is continuous on  $[1, 2]$  (In fact, on  $\mathbb{R}$ )

By the Intermediate Value Theorem, there exists  $c \in (1, 2)$  such that  $f(c) = c^2 = 2$ .

$c$  is  $\sqrt{2}$  by definition!

$\therefore 1 < \sqrt{2} < 2$  (estimates  $\sqrt{2}$ )

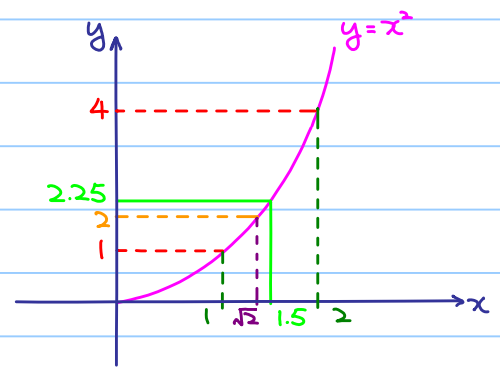
We can further obtain a better estimation by:

① Take the mid-point of  $[1, 2]$ , i.e. 1.5.

②  $f(1.5) = 2.25 > 2$ .

③  $f(1) = 1 < 2 < 2.25 = f(1.5)$

$\therefore 1 < \sqrt{2} < 1.5$



Repeating again and again to obtain better and better estimation.

It is well-known as method of bisection!

Example 4.4.2

Show that  $2^x = \frac{1}{x^2}$  has at least one solution

(i.e. let  $f(x) = 2^x - \frac{1}{x^2}$ , the equation  $f(x) = 0$  has at least one solution)

Note that  $f(\frac{1}{2}) = 2^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{1}{(\frac{1}{2})^2} = \sqrt{2} - 4 < 0$

$$f(1) = 2^1 - \frac{1}{1^2} = 2 - 1 = 1 > 0$$

and  $f$  is continuous on  $[\frac{1}{2}, 1]$ .

By the Intermediate Value Theorem, there exists  $c \in (\frac{1}{2}, 1)$

such that  $f(c) = 2^c - \frac{1}{c^2} = 0$ , i.e.  $2^c = \frac{1}{c^2}$ .

Remark:  $\frac{1}{2}$  and 1 can be replaced by other points  $a$  and  $b$ , but we have

to make sure that  $f$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$ .

$$f(-1) = 2^{-1} - \frac{1}{(-1)^2} = \frac{1}{2} - 1 = -\frac{1}{2} < 0$$

$$f(1) = 2^1 - \frac{1}{1^2} = 2 - 1 = 1 > 0$$

Can we use the Intermediate Value Theorem? No!  $f$  is NOT continuous on  $[-1, 1]$ !

### Example 4.4.3

Let  $f(x) = x^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$  where  $b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}$ .

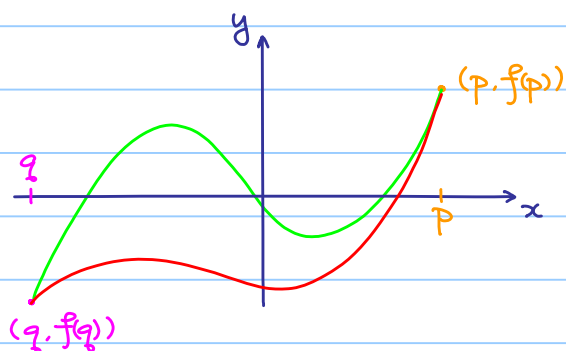
Prove that the equation  $f(x) = 0$  has at least one real root.

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= x^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \\ &= x^3 \left( 1 + \frac{b}{x} + \frac{c}{x^2} + \frac{d}{x^3} \right) \end{aligned}$$

We can choose  $p > 0$  such that if  $x = p$ ,  $1 + \frac{b}{p} + \frac{c}{p^2} + \frac{d}{p^3} > 0$

Similarly, we can choose  $q < 0$  such that if  $x = q$ ,  $1 + \frac{b}{q} + \frac{c}{q^2} + \frac{d}{q^3} > 0$

Then  $f(q) < 0 < f(p)$ .



What is the graph of  $y = f(x)$ ?

Red? Green?

Anyway, they cut the  $x$ -axis!

$f$  is continuous on  $[q, p]$ .

$\therefore$  By Intermediate Value Theorem, there exists  $x_0 \in (q, p)$  such that  $f(x_0) = 0$

Remark:

- 1) By factor theorem,  $(x - x_0)$  is a factor of  $f(x)$ .
- 2) This idea can be generalized to any polynomial  $f(x)$  with odd degree.

## 4.5 Relative and Absolute Extrema

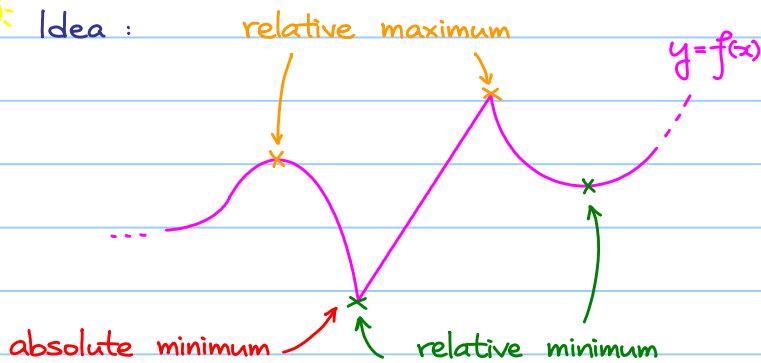
Definition 4.5.1

$f$  has an absolute maximum (resp. minimum) point at  $a$  if  $f(x) \leq f(a)$  (resp.  $f(x) \geq f(a)$ ) for all  $x$  in the domain of  $f$ .

$f$  has a relative maximum (resp. minimum) point at  $a$  if  $f(x) \leq f(a)$  (resp.  $f(x) \geq f(a)$ ) for all  $x$  in a neighborhood of  $a$ .



Idea :



Note : No absolute maximum in this case.

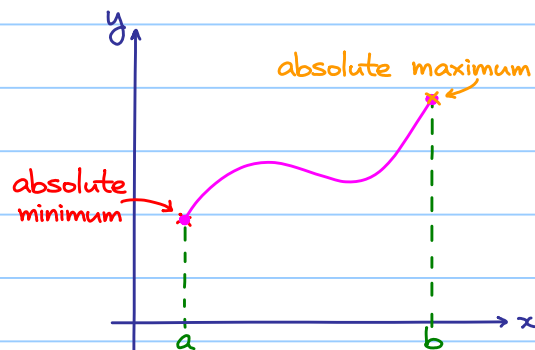
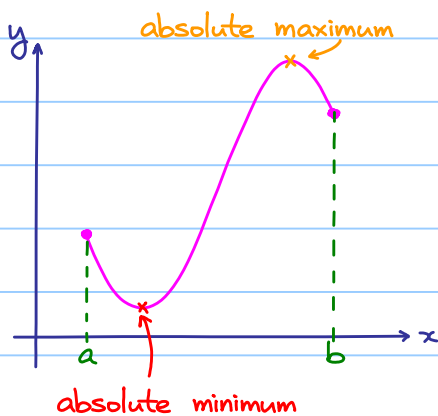
Remark :

- 1) We simply use maximum / minimum to refer relative maximum / minimum.
- 2) Absolute maximum / minimum are also called global maximum / minimum.

Theorem 4.5.1 (Maximum-Minimum Theorem)

Let  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function

Then there exists  $x_m, x_M \in [a, b]$  such that  $f(x_m) \leq f(x) \leq f(x_M)$  for all  $x \in [a, b]$ .



Absolute maximum / minimum may be attained at the boundary points of  $[a, b]$ .

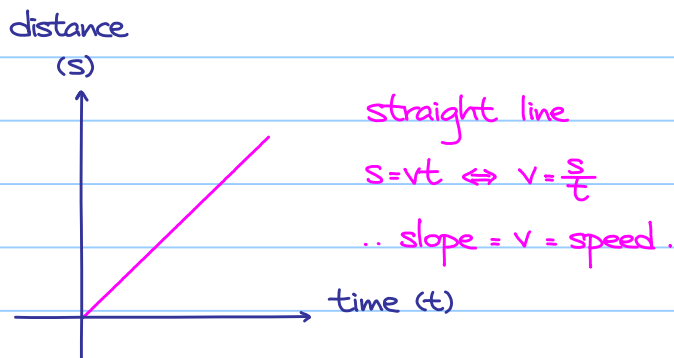
Main question : Given a function, how to find all absolute / relative extrema ?

Differentiation provides a powerful tool for that.

## § 5 Differentiation

### 5.1 Idea of Derivative

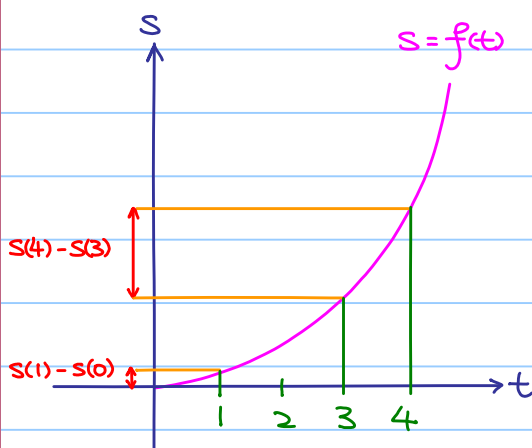
Recall: (average) speed =  $\frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}$



Remark:

Using displacement and velocity if you know.

How about this case?



distance traveled from  $t=0$  to  $t=1$   $<$  distance traveled from  $t=3$  to  $t=4$

$(s(1) - s(0))$   $(s(4) - s(3))$

Why? The speed is changing.

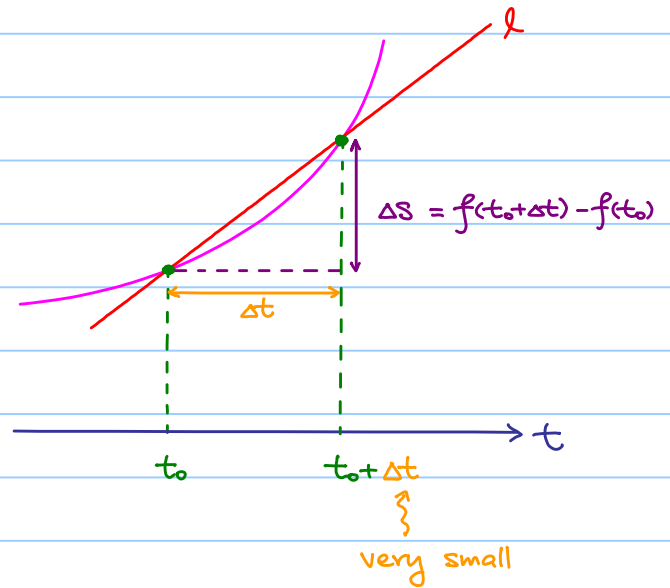
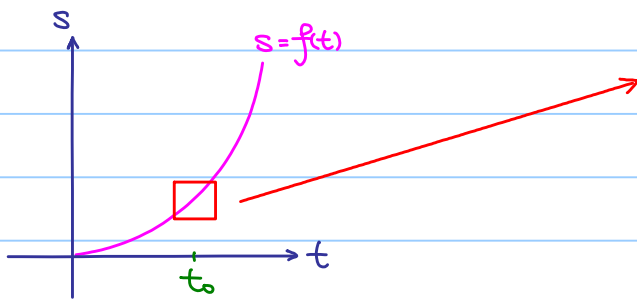
Speed is different at different moment.

Hold on!

What is the meaning of speed at a particular moment (instantaneous speed)?

We need a definition!

Instantaneous speed at  $t=t_0$ :



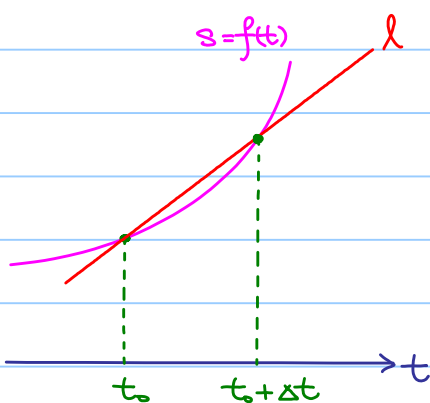
Average speed between  $t_0$  and  $t_0 + \Delta t$

$$= \frac{\text{change in distance}}{\text{change in time}} = \frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t} = \frac{f(t_0 + \Delta t) - f(t_0)}{\Delta t} = \text{slope of } l$$

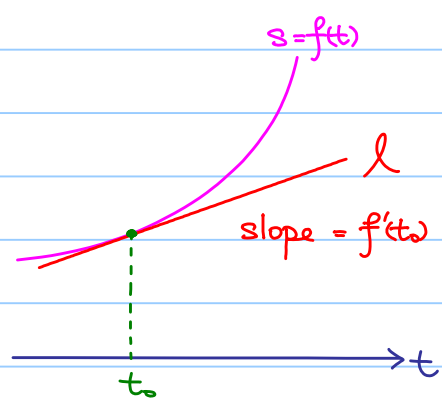


Idea: Let  $\Delta t$  becomes smaller and smaller!

Instantaneous speed at  $t=t_0$  is defined to be  $\lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(t_0 + \Delta t) - f(t_0)}{\Delta t}$   
 (provided it exists, if so, it is denoted by  $f'(t_0)$ )



as  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$



Note: When  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ ,  $l$  becomes the tangent line at  $t=t_0$ , so  
 slope of the tangent line at  $t=t_0 = f'(t_0)$

Example 5.1.1

If  $s = f(t) = t^2$ , find  $f'(2)$  (instantaneous speed at  $t=2$ ).

$$\begin{aligned} f'(2) &= \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(2+\Delta t) - f(2)}{\Delta t} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{(2+\Delta t)^2 - 2^2}{\Delta t} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{2 \cdot 2\Delta t + \Delta t^2}{\Delta t} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} 2 \cdot 2 + \Delta t = 2 \cdot 2 = 4 \end{aligned}$$

In general, we have  $y = f(x)$ , fix  $x_0$ .

Then  $f'(x_0)$  means rate of change of  $y$  with respect to  $x$  at  $x = x_0$ .

Definition 5.1.1

$f(x)$  is said to be differentiable at  $x = x_0$  if  $\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + \Delta x) - f(x_0)}{\Delta x}$  exists (called the first principle).  
It is called the derivative of  $f(x)$  at  $x = x_0$  and it is denoted by  $f'(x_0)$ .

Note: By definition, if  $f(x_0)$  is NOT well-defined, then  $f'(x_0)$  is NOT well-defined.

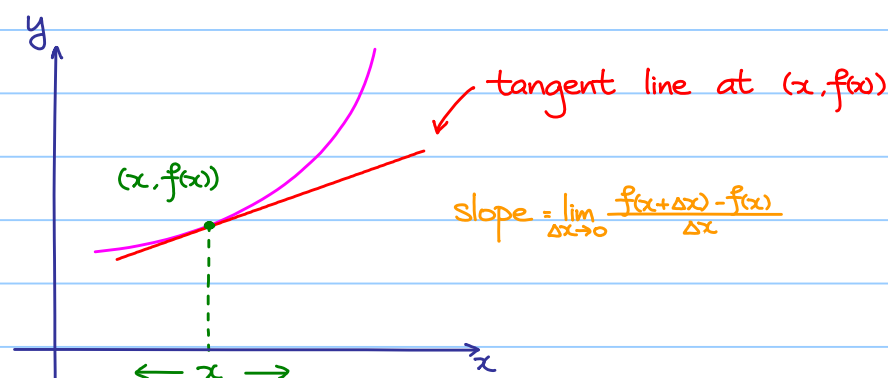
Let  $\Delta x = x - x_0$ , i.e.  $x = x_0 + \Delta x$

When  $\Delta x$  tends to 0,  $x$  tends to  $x_0$

Therefore, we have another formulation:

$f(x)$  is said to be differentiable at  $x = x_0$  if  $\lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} \frac{f(x) - f(x_0)}{x - x_0}$  exists.

Perform the previous step at every point:



Recall: What is a function?

Roughly speaking, given an input  $x$ , return a value

Now, we construct a new function,  $f'(x) = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+\Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x}$  (if exists)

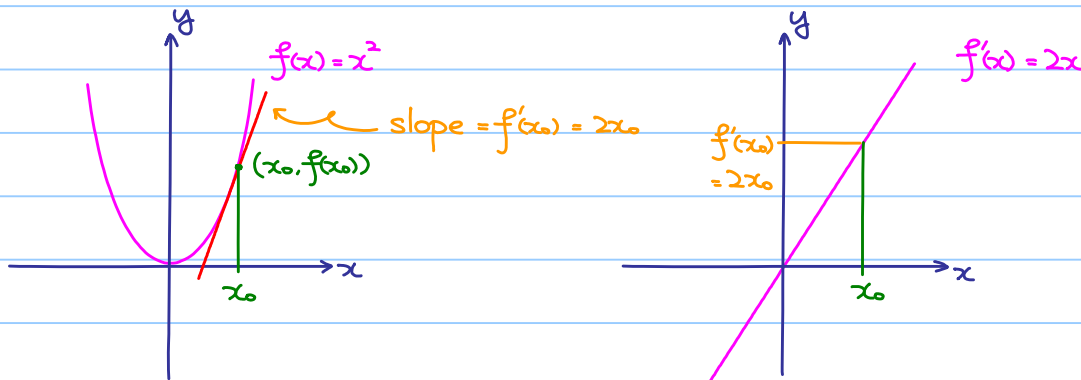
(i.e. given an input  $x$ , return the slope of the tangent line at  $(x, f(x))$ .)

Example 5.1.2

If  $f(x) = x^2$ , find  $f'(x)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+\Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+\Delta x)^2 - x^2}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{2x\Delta x + \Delta x^2}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} 2x + \Delta x = 2x \end{aligned}$$

Relation between the graphs of  $f(x) = x^2$  and  $f'(x) = 2x$ :



Notations:

$$y = f(x) = x^2$$

$$\frac{df}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dx} = f'(x) = 2x$$

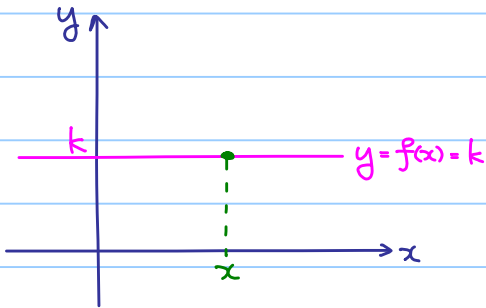
$$\left. \frac{df}{dx} \right|_{x=3} = \left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_{x=3} = f'(3) = 2(3) = 6$$

Definition 5.1.2

If  $f: A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a function that is differentiable at every point in  $A$ , then  $f(x)$  is said to be a differentiable function.

### Theorem 5.1.1

If  $f(x) = k$ , where  $k$  is a constant, then  $f'(x) = 0$ .



Note: tangent line at  $(x, f(x))$  is horizontal  
 $\therefore f'(x) = 0$

Concrete computation:

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+\Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x} &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{k - k}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{0}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} 0 \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

### Exercise 5.1.1

Find  $f'(x)$  if

(a)  $f(x) = x$

Ans:  $f'(x) = 1$

(b)  $f(x) = x^3$

$f'(x) = 3x^2$

### Theorem 5.1.2

If  $f(x) = x^r$ , where  $r$  is a real number, then  $f'(x) = rx^{r-1}$  whenever it is defined.

(Think: If  $r = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$  which is defined when  $x \geq 0$ .)

proof:

We only prove the case  $f(x) = x^n$ , where  $n$  is a natural number.

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+\Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x} &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+\Delta x)^n - x^n}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(C_0 x^n + C_1 x^{n-1} \Delta x + C_2 x^{n-2} \Delta x^2 + \dots + C_n \Delta x^n) - x^n}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \underbrace{C_1 x^{n-1} + C_2 x^{n-2} \Delta x + \dots + C_n \Delta x^{n-1}}_{\text{terms with powers of } \Delta x} \\ &= nx^{n-1}\end{aligned}$$



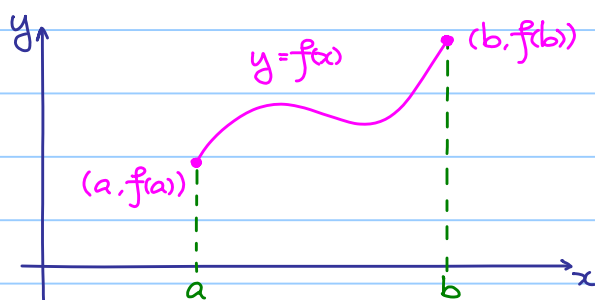
## Differentiability on $[a, b]$

### Definition 5.1.3

Let  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

$f$  is said to be differentiable at  $x=a$  if  $\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(a+\Delta x) - f(a)}{\Delta x}$  exists (or  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$  exists).

$f$  is said to be differentiable at  $x=b$  if  $\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{f(b+\Delta x) - f(b)}{\Delta x}$  exists (or  $\lim_{x \rightarrow b^-} \frac{f(x) - f(b)}{x - b}$  exists).



### Example 5.1.3

Let  $f: [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $f(x) = x^{\frac{3}{2}}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(0+\Delta x) - f(0)}{\Delta x} &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\Delta x^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \Delta x^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f$  is differentiable at  $x=0$  and  $f'(0) = 0$

## 5.2 Differentiability and Continuity

### Theorem 5.2.1

If  $f(x)$  is differentiable at  $x=x_0$ , then  $f(x)$  is continuous at  $x=x_0$ .

proof: By assumption,  $\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0+\Delta x) - f(x_0)}{\Delta x}$  exists

Also, we know  $\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \Delta x = 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} f(x_0+\Delta x) - f(x_0) &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0+\Delta x) - f(x_0)}{\Delta x} \cdot \Delta x \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0+\Delta x) - f(x_0)}{\Delta x} \cdot \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \Delta x = f'(x_0) \cdot 0 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

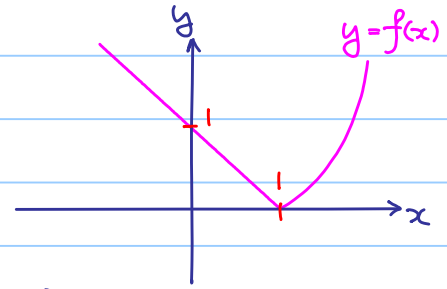
both exist

$\therefore \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} f(x_0+\Delta x) = f(x_0)$ , so  $f(x)$  is continuous at  $x=x_0$ .

However, the converse is **NOT** true.

Example 5.2.1

$$\text{Let } f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 1 & \text{if } x \geq 1 \\ 1 - x & \text{if } x < 1 \end{cases}$$



$$\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(1+\Delta x) - f(1)}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{[(1+\Delta x)^2 - 1] - [1^2 - 1]}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{2\Delta x + \Delta x^2}{\Delta x} = 2$$

↑ (it means we are looking at small but positive  $\Delta x$ )

$$\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{f(1+\Delta x) - f(1)}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{[1 - (1+\Delta x)] - [1^2 - 1]}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{-\Delta x}{\Delta x} = -1$$

↑ (it means we are looking at small but negative  $\Delta x$ )

$$\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(1+\Delta x) - f(1)}{\Delta x} \neq \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{f(1+\Delta x) - f(1)}{\Delta x} \Rightarrow \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(1+\Delta x) - f(1)}{\Delta x} \text{ does NOT exist!}$$

$\therefore f(x)$  is NOT differentiable at  $x=1$ .

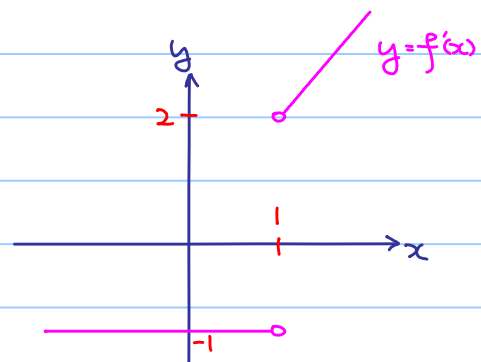
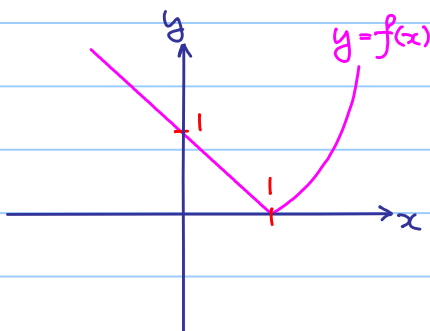
Exercise 5.2.1

a) Show that  $f(x)$  is continuous at  $x=1$ , i.e.  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x) = f(1)$ .

(Therefore, the converse statement of theorem 5.2.1 is NOT true.)

b) Write down  $f'(x)$  for  $x \neq 1$ .

$$\text{Answer: } f'(x) = \begin{cases} 2x & \text{if } x > 1 \\ \text{undefined} & \text{if } x = 1 \\ -1 & \text{if } x < 1 \end{cases}$$



### 5.3 Elementary Rules of Differentiation

Theorem 5.3.1

If  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  are differentiable functions, then

$$1) (f+g)'(x) = f'(x) + g'(x)$$

$$2) (f-g)'(x) = f'(x) - g'(x)$$

$$3) \text{ [product rule] } (f \cdot g)'(x) = f'(x)g(x) + f(x)g'(x)$$

$$4) \text{ [quotient rule] } \left(\frac{f}{g}\right)'(x) = \frac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2} \quad \text{if } g(x) \neq 0$$

proof of (3):

$$\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(f \cdot g)(x + \Delta x) - (f \cdot g)(x)}{\Delta x}$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x + \Delta x)g(x + \Delta x) - f(x)g(x)}{\Delta x}$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x + \Delta x)g(x + \Delta x) - f(x)g(x + \Delta x) + f(x)g(x + \Delta x) - f(x)g(x)}{\Delta x}$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x + \Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x} g(x + \Delta x) + f(x) \frac{g(x + \Delta x) - g(x)}{\Delta x}$$

$$= f'(x)g(x) + f(x)g'(x)$$

+  $g(x)$  is differentiable

$\Rightarrow g(x)$  is continuous

$\Rightarrow \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} g(x + \Delta x) = g(x)$

Direct consequence:

Theorem 5.3.2

If  $k$  is a constant and  $f(x)$  is a differentiable function, then  $(k \cdot f)'(x) = k f'(x)$ .

proof:

Using the product rule and theorem 5.1.1

$$(k \cdot f)'(x) = \underbrace{(k)'}_0 f(x) + k f'(x) = k f'(x)$$

Example 5.3.1

Find  $\frac{d}{dx}(3x^2 + 7x - 2)$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(3x^2 + 7x - 2) = \frac{d}{dx}(3x^2) + \frac{d}{dx}(7x) - \frac{d}{dx}(2)$$

$$= 3 \frac{d}{dx}(x^2) + 7 \frac{d}{dx}(x) - \frac{d}{dx}(2)$$

$$= 3(2x) + 7(1) - 0$$

$$= 6x + 7$$

Example 5.3.2

Find  $\frac{d}{dx}(3x^2-5x+1)(2x+7)$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx} [(3x^2-5x+1)(2x+7)] \\ &= \left[ \frac{d}{dx}(3x^2-5x+1) \right] (2x+7) + (3x^2-5x+1) \left[ \frac{d}{dx}(2x+7) \right] \\ &= (6x-5)(2x+7) + (3x^2-5x+1)(2) \\ &= 18x^2 + 22x - 33\end{aligned}$$

Try to compare : Expand  $(3x^2-5x+1)(2x+7)$  and get  $6x^3+11x^2-33x+7$   
Then differentiate, get the same result?

Example 5.3.3

Find the derivative of  $\frac{2x}{x^2+1}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx} \frac{2x}{x^2+1} &= \frac{\left[ \frac{d}{dx}(2x) \right] (x^2+1) - (2x) \left[ \frac{d}{dx}(x^2+1) \right]}{(x^2+1)^2} \\ &= \frac{2(x^2+1) - 2x(2x)}{(x^2+1)^2} \\ &= \frac{-2x^2+2}{(x^2+1)^2}\end{aligned}$$

Example 5.3.4

Find the derivative of  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} + \sqrt{x}$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} + \sqrt{x} \right) &= \frac{d}{dx} (x^{-\frac{1}{2}} + x^{\frac{1}{2}}) \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}x^{-\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{1}{2}x^{-\frac{1}{2}}\end{aligned}$$

## 5.4 Higher Derivatives

$s(t)$ : distance functions (depends on time  $t$ )

(instantaneous) speed = rate of change of distance travelled with respect to  $t$ .

$$v(t) = \frac{ds}{dt} \quad (\text{still a function of } t)$$

Question: What is  $\frac{dv}{dt}$ ?

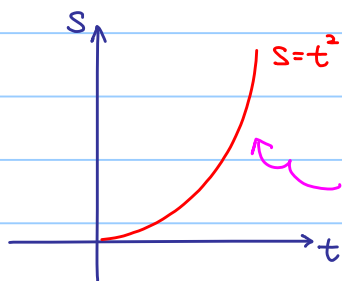
Answer: Acceleration!

= rate of change of speed with respect to  $t$ .

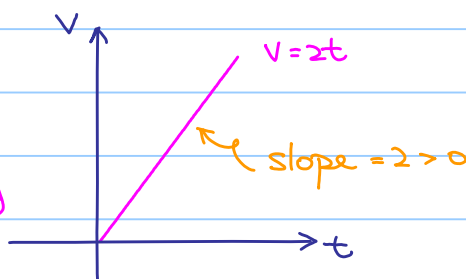
$$\text{We write } a(t) = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2}$$

Example 5.4.1

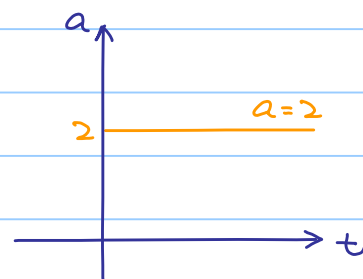
$$s(t) = t^2$$



$$v(t) = \frac{ds}{dt} = 2t$$



$$a(t) = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = 2$$



speed is increasing  
i.e. accelerating

Notations:

In general, let  $y = f(x)$ .

We have: (1st derivative)  $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{df}{dx} = f'(x)$

(2nd derivative)  $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{d^2f}{dx^2} = f''(x)$

(n-th derivative)  $\frac{d^ny}{dx^n} = \frac{d^nf}{dx^n} = f^{(n)}(x)$

## 5.5 Derivatives of Trigonometric Functions

Preparations:

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1 - \cos x}{x^2} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{2\sin^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)}{x^2} \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sin^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)}{\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Note: } \cos x = 1 - 2\sin^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$$

$$\therefore 1 - \cos x = 2\sin^2\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1 - \cos x}{x} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1 - \cos x}{x^2} \cdot x \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1 - \cos x}{x^2} \cdot \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot 0 \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

$$\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos(x + \Delta x) - \cos x}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos x \cos \Delta x - \sin x \sin \Delta x - \cos x}{\Delta x}$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \cos x \frac{\cos \Delta x - 1}{\Delta x} - \sin x \frac{\sin \Delta x}{\Delta x}$$

$$= -\sin x$$

$$(\because \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos \Delta x - 1}{\Delta x} = 0 \text{ and } \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin \Delta x}{\Delta x} = 1.)$$

$$\therefore \frac{d}{dx} \cos x = -\sin x$$

Exercise 5.5.1

Show that  $\frac{d}{dx} \sin x = \cos x$  by using method similar to the above.

$$\tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} \quad \sec x = \frac{1}{\cos x} \quad \csc x = \frac{1}{\sin x} \quad \cot x = \frac{\cos x}{\sin x}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \tan x = \frac{d}{dx} \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} \stackrel{(*)}{=} \frac{1}{\cos^2 x} = \sec^2 x \quad (*) \text{ Exercise: By quotient rule}$$

Exercise 5.5.2

Show that

a)  $\frac{d}{dx} \sec x = \sec x \tan x$

b)  $\frac{d}{dx} \csc x = -\csc x \cot x$

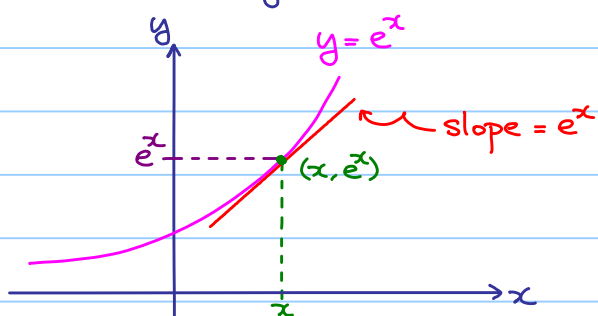
c)  $\frac{d}{dx} \cot x = -\csc^2 x$

## 5.6 Derivative of $e^x$

Cheating:  $e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx} e^x &= \frac{d}{dx} \left( 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots \right) \\ &= 0 + 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots \\ &= e^x \quad (\text{getting back itself})\end{aligned}$$

Geometrical meaning:



Example 5.6.1

Find  $\frac{d}{dx} [e^x(3x^2 + 7x - 2)]$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx} [e^x(3x^2 + 7x - 2)] &= \left[ \frac{d}{dx} e^x \right] (3x^2 + 7x - 2) + e^x \left[ \frac{d}{dx} (3x^2 + 7x - 2) \right] \\ &= e^x(3x^2 + 7x - 2) + e^x(6x + 7) \\ &= e^x(3x^2 + 13x + 5)\end{aligned}$$

Question: How do we differentiate a more complicated function, such as  $\sqrt{x^2 + 3x}$ ?

We need a tool called **chain rule**

## 5.7 Chain Rule

Theorem 5.7.1

If  $f: B \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $g: A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are differentiable functions such that  $g(A) \subseteq B$ , then the composite function  $(f \circ g): A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by  $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$  is differentiable and  $(f \circ g)'(x) = f'(g(x)) g'(x)$

Hard to understand? Let's reformulate it as:

Let  $u = g(x)$ ,  $y = f(u) = f(g(x))$ , then

the chain rule simply means  $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$

Think:  $\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta u} \cdot \frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x}$

### Example 5.7.1

Find the derivative of  $\sqrt{x^2+3x}$ .

Let  $u = g(x) = x^2+3x$ ,  $\frac{du}{dx} = 2x+3$

$y = f(u) = \sqrt{u}$   $\frac{dy}{du} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{u}}$

then  $f(g(x)) = \sqrt{x^2+3x}$

By the chain rule,  $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$   
 $= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{u}} \cdot (2x+3)$

$= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x^2+3x}} \cdot (2x+3)$  put  $u = x^2+3x$  back

differentiate  $f$   
then put back  $g(x)$   $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} f'(g(x)) \\ g'(x) \end{array} \right.$

### Example 5.7.2

Find the derivative of  $(3x^2-2x)^{10}$

Let  $u = g(x) = 3x^2-2x$   $\frac{du}{dx} = 6x-2$

$y = f(u) = u^{10}$   $\frac{dy}{du} = 10u^9$

then  $y = f(g(x)) = (3x^2-2x)^{10}$

By chain rule,  $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$   
 $= 10u^9 \cdot (6x-2)$

$= 10(3x^2-2x)^9 \cdot (6x-2)$  put  $u = 3x^2-2x$  back

$= 20(3x^2-2x)^9 \cdot (3x-1)$

Slogan: differentiate layer by layer.

### Exercise 5.7.1

Show that  $\frac{d}{dx} e^{ax} = ae^{ax}$

Show that  $\frac{d}{dx} a^x = (\ln a)a^x$ , for  $a > 0$ . (Hint:  $a^x = e^{(\ln a^x)} = e^{(\ln a)x}$ )

### Exercise 5.7.2

Find the derivative of  $\left(\frac{x}{x+1}\right)^2$

a) by using the chain rule;

b) by writing  $\left(\frac{x}{x+1}\right)^2 = \frac{x^2}{(x+1)^2}$  and using the quotient rule.

Answer: Both equal to  $\frac{2x}{(x+1)^3}$ .



### Example 5.7.3

Find the derivative of  $e^{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$ .

$$\text{1st layer } y = e^w \quad w = \sqrt{x^2+1}$$

$$\text{2nd layer } w = \sqrt{u} \quad u = x^2+1$$

$$\text{3rd layer } u = x^2+1$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dw} \cdot \frac{dw}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$= e^{\sqrt{x^2+1}} \cdot \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x^2+1}} \cdot 2x$$

$$= \frac{x e^{\sqrt{x^2+1}}}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$$

### Example 5.7.3

Revisit of quotient rule:

$$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)'(x) = \frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right) = \frac{d}{dx} (f(x) [g(x)]^{-1})$$

$$= \frac{df}{dx} [g(x)]^{-1} + f(x) \frac{d}{dx} [g(x)]^{-1}$$

$$= \frac{df}{dx} [g(x)]^{-1} + f(x) \left\{ -[g(x)]^{-2} \frac{dg}{dx} \right\}$$

$$= \frac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}$$

Apply the chain rule

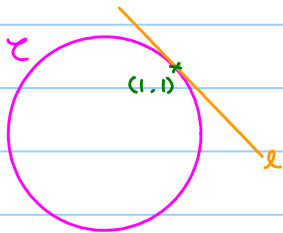
## 5.8 Implicit Differentiation

Example 5.8.1

$$x^2 + y^2 = 2 \quad \text{--- } \mathcal{C}$$

Locus of  $\mathcal{C}$  is a circle centered at  $(0,0)$  with radius  $\sqrt{2}$ .

Check:  $(1,1)$  is a point lying on the circle.

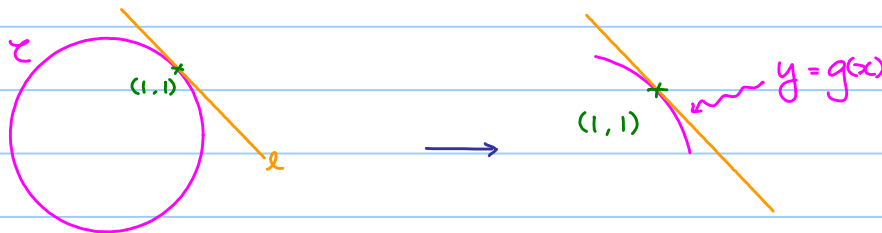


We want to find the equation of the tangent line  $l$   
(i.e. need to know the slope of  $l$ )

Note:  $x^2 + y^2 = 2$  is NOT a function!

Question: How to find  $\frac{dy}{dx}$ ? (Actually, is it well defined?)

Answer: Yes, roughly speaking.



The small segment of  $\mathcal{C}$  containing  $(1,1)$  can be regarded as the graph of some function  $y = g(x)$ . (In fact,  $g(x) = \sqrt{2-x^2}$  in this case.)

How to find? Do it as usual!

$$x^2 + y^2 = 2$$

differentiate both sides with respect to  $x$ .

$$2x + \frac{d}{dx} y^2 = 0$$

$$2x + 2y \frac{dy}{dx} = 0 \quad (\text{Applying chain rule})$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y}$$

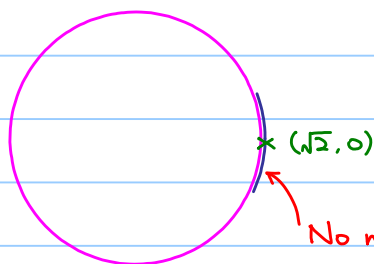
$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = -1 \quad \text{when } (x,y) = (1,1).$$

$$\text{We denote it by } \left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_{(x,y)=(1,1)} = -1$$

Remark.

$\frac{dy}{dx}$  is defined at a point of a curve only if a small arc containing the point can be regarded as the graph of some function  $y=g(x)$ .

$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx}$  is NOT defined when  $(x,y) = (\pm\sqrt{2}, 0)$ .



No matter how small the arc is,

it cannot be realized as graph of some function  $y=g(x)$ .

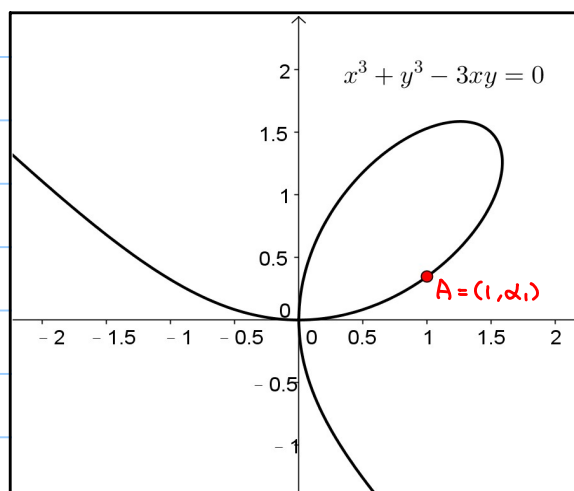
Example 5.8.2

$$x^3 + y^3 - 3xy = 0 \quad \text{--- } \mathcal{C}$$

$$3x^2 + 3y^2 \frac{dy}{dx} - 3y - 3x \frac{dy}{dx} = 0$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y-x^2}{y^2-x}$$

If we want to find the slope of the tangent line at A.



putting  $x=1$  into  $\mathcal{C}$ .

$$y^3 - 3y + 1 = 0$$

NOT easy to solve!

FACT: The above equation has three roots, two roots  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2$  are positive ( $\alpha_1 < \alpha_2$ ) one root is negative.

$A = (1, \alpha_1)$  and what we need is  $\left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_{(x,y)=(1,\alpha_1)}$

## Applications :

Example 5.8.3

Differentiation of Logarithmic Function

Let  $y = \ln x$ ,  $x > 0$ . Then  $e^y = x$ ,

differentiate both sides with respect to  $x$ .

$$e^y \frac{dy}{dx} = 1$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{e^y} = \frac{1}{x}$$

$$\therefore \frac{d}{dx} \ln x = \frac{1}{x} \text{ for } x > 0.$$

Exercise 5.8.1

By rewriting  $\log_a x = \frac{\ln x}{\ln a}$ , show that  $\frac{d}{dx} \log_a x = \frac{1}{x \ln a}$ .

Example 5.8.4

Let  $y = \ln|x|$ ,  $x \neq 0$ . Find  $\frac{dy}{dx}$ .

We can rewrite  $y = \begin{cases} \ln x & \text{if } x > 0 \\ \ln(-x) & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$

For  $x > 0$ , we have just shown that  $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x}$

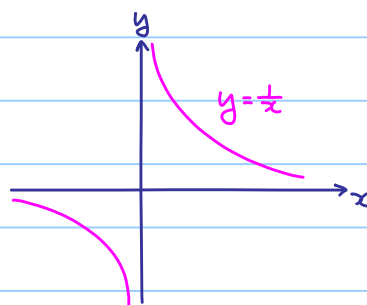
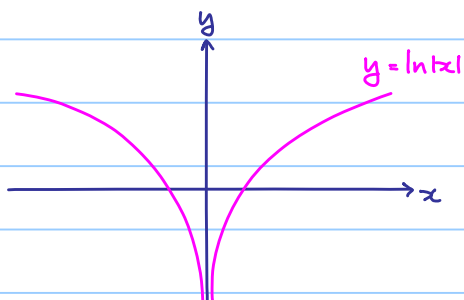
For  $x < 0$ ,  $y = \ln(-x)$

$$e^y = -x$$

$$e^y \frac{dy}{dx} = -1$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-1}{e^y} = \frac{1}{x}$$

$$\therefore \frac{d}{dx} \ln|x| = \frac{1}{x} \text{ for } x \neq 0.$$



Note: It is why  $\int \frac{1}{x} dx = \ln|x| + C$ .

### Example 5.8.5

If  $y = \sqrt[3]{\frac{(x-1)(x-2)^2}{x-4}}$ , then find  $\frac{dy}{dx}$ .

Difficult to differentiate by using chain rule and quotient rule.

$$y^3 = \frac{(x-1)(x-2)^2}{x-4}$$

$$|y|^3 = \frac{|x-1||x-2|^2}{|x-4|}$$

$$\ln|y|^3 = \ln \frac{|x-1||x-2|^2}{|x-4|}$$

$$3 \ln|y| = \ln|x-1| + 2 \ln|x-2| - \ln|x-4|$$

$$\frac{3}{y} \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{2}{x-2} - \frac{1}{x-4}$$

(Apply implicit differentiation)

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y}{3} \left( \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{2}{x-2} - \frac{1}{x-4} \right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{3} \sqrt[3]{\frac{(x-1)(x-2)^2}{x-4}} \left( \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{2}{x-2} - \frac{1}{x-4} \right)$$

### Example 5.8.6

Let  $y = \frac{e^{5x} \sqrt[3]{x^2+1}}{(3x^2+1)^4}$ . Find  $\frac{dy}{dx}$ .

$$y = \frac{e^{5x} \sqrt[3]{x^2+1}}{(3x^2+1)^4}$$

$$\ln y = 5x + \frac{1}{3} \ln(x^2+1) - 4 \ln(3x^2+1)$$

Ex: ∴

$$\text{Ans: } \frac{dy}{dx} = \left[ 5 + \frac{2x}{3(x^2+1)} - \frac{24x}{3x^2+1} \right] \frac{e^{5x} \sqrt[3]{x^2+1}}{(3x^2+1)^4}$$

### Example 5.8.7

Differentiation of Inverse Trigonometric Functions

Let  $y = \sin^{-1}x$ ,  $\sin^{-1}: [-1, 1] \rightarrow [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ . Then,  $\sin y = x$ .

differentiate both sides with respect to  $x$ .

$$\cos y \frac{dy}{dx} = 1$$

$$\sin y = x, \quad -\frac{\pi}{2} \leq y \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\cos y}$$

$$\cos y = \pm \sqrt{1 - \sin^2 y}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$$

$$= \sqrt{1-x^2} \quad \text{or} \quad -\sqrt{1-x^2}$$

$$\therefore \frac{d}{dx} \sin^{-1}x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$$

(rejected,  $-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq y \leq \frac{\pi}{2} \Rightarrow \cos y \geq 0$ )

Let  $y = \cos^{-1}x$ ,  $\cos^{-1}: [-1, 1] \rightarrow [0, \pi]$ . Then,  $\cos y = x$ .

differentiate both sides with respect to  $x$ .

$$-\sin y \frac{dy}{dx} = 1$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sin y}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$$

$$\therefore \frac{d}{dx} \cos^{-1}x = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$$

$$\cos y = x, \quad 0 \leq y \leq \pi$$

$$\sin y = \pm \sqrt{1-\cos^2 y}$$

$$= \sqrt{1-x^2} \quad \text{or} \quad -\sqrt{1-x^2}$$

(rejected,  $0 \leq y \leq \pi \Rightarrow \sin y \geq 0$ )

Exercise 5.8.1

Let  $y = \tan^{-1}x$ ,  $\tan^{-1}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow (-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ .

Find  $\frac{dy}{dx}$       Ans:  $\frac{d}{dx} \tan^{-1}x = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$

Example 5.8.8

Let  $y = x^x$ ,  $x > 0$ . Find  $\frac{dy}{dx}$ .

Note: The power is NOT a constant, we cannot use the formula  $\frac{d}{dx} x^n = nx^{n-1}$ .

$$y = x^x$$

$$\ln y = \ln x^x = x \ln x$$

differentiate both sides with respect to  $x$ .

$$\frac{1}{y} \frac{dy}{dx} = \ln x + x \cdot \frac{1}{x}$$

$$= \ln x + 1$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = (\ln x + 1)y = (\ln x + 1)x^x$$

Example 5.8.9

Suppose  $x^3 + y^3 - 3xy = 0$ , find  $\frac{dy}{dx}$  and  $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ .

$$x^3 + y^3 - 3xy = 0$$

$$3x^2 + 3y^2 \frac{dy}{dx} - 3y - 3x \frac{dy}{dx} = 0$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y-x^2}{y^2-x}$$

differentiate both sides with respect to  $x$  again

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{\frac{dy}{dx}(y^2-x) - (y-x^2)(2y \frac{dy}{dx} - 1)}{(y^2-x)^2}$$

Sub.  $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y-x^2}{y^2-x}$  back to express  $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$  in terms of  $x$  and  $y$  only, if you want. (Nightmare!)

## 5.9 More on Differentiability

Example 5.9.1

$$\text{Let } f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 \cos \frac{1}{x} & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$$

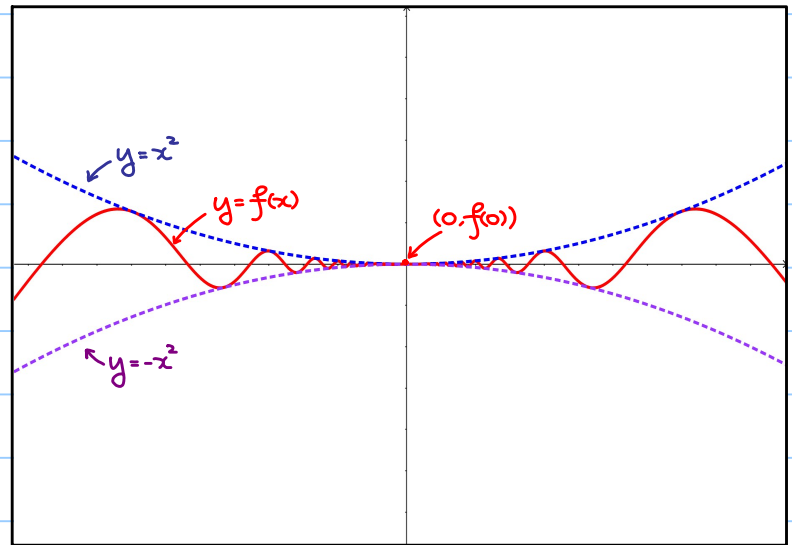
Does  $f'(0)$  exist?

$$\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(0+\Delta x) - f(0)}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta x^2 \cos \frac{1}{\Delta x}}{\Delta x}$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \Delta x \cos \frac{1}{\Delta x}$$

$$= 0$$

By sandwich theorem



$$\text{If } x \neq 0, \quad f'(x) = 2x \cos \frac{1}{x} + x^2 \left(-\sin \frac{1}{x}\right) \left(-\frac{1}{x^2}\right) \\ = 2x \cos \frac{1}{x} + \sin \frac{1}{x}$$

$\therefore f$  is a differentiable function, i.e. differentiable at every point.

Note: It is wrong to say  $f'(x) = 2x \cos \frac{1}{x} + \sin \frac{1}{x}$ , so  $f'(0)$  does NOT exist

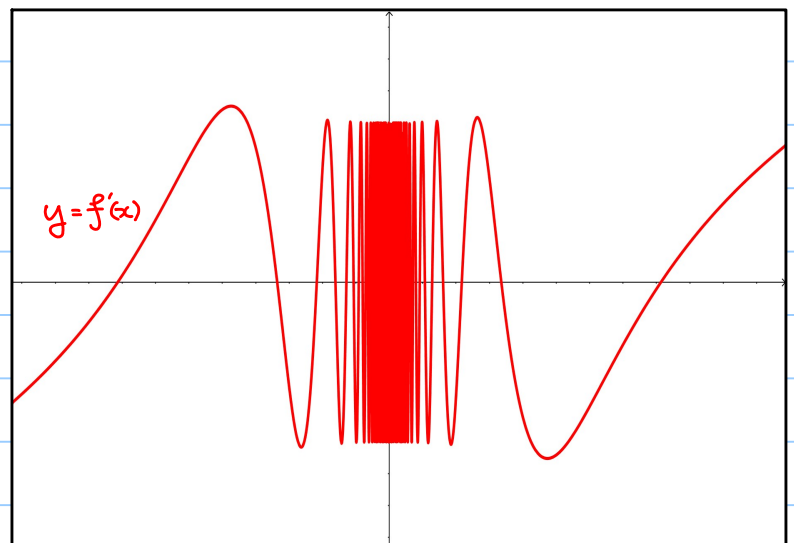
$$\text{Now, } f'(x) = \begin{cases} 2x \cos \frac{1}{x} + \sin \frac{1}{x} & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$$

Exercise:

Show  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f'(x)$  does NOT exist

( $\Rightarrow f'(x)$  is NOT continuous at  $x=0$ )

$\therefore f$  is differentiable ("good" in some sense)  
but  $f'(x)$  can be "bad".



### Example 5.9.2

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a **non-constant** function such that

(i)  $f$  is differentiable at some  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}$

(ii)  $f(x+y) = f(x)f(y)$  for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Show that :

a)  $f(x) \neq 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $f(0) = 1$ .

b)  $f$  is differentiable at every  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $f'(x) = \frac{f'(x_0)}{f(x_0)} f(x)$ .

a) If  $f(a) = 0$  for some  $a \in \mathbb{R}$

then for any  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , we have

$$f(x) = f(x-a+a) = f(x-a)f(a) = 0$$

i.e.  $f(x)$  is constant zero (Contradict to the assumption)

$$\therefore f(x) \neq 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Putting  $x=y=0$ ,

$$f(0+0) = f(0)f(0)$$

$$f(0) = [f(0)]^2$$

$$f(0) = 1 \text{ or } 0 \text{ (rejected)}$$

b)  $f$  is differentiable at  $x_0$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow f'(x_0) &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0 + \Delta x) - f(x_0)}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_0)f(\Delta x) - f(x_0)}{\Delta x} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(\Delta x) - 1}{\Delta x} = \frac{f'(x_0)}{f(x_0)} \quad (\because f(x_0) \neq 0)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now, } \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x + \Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x} &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x)f(\Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x} \\ &= f(x) \cdot \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(\Delta x) - 1}{\Delta x} \\ &= \frac{f'(x_0)}{f(x_0)} f(x) \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f$  is differentiable at every  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $f'(x) = \frac{f'(x_0)}{f(x_0)} f(x)$ .

(In fact,  $f(x) = e^{kx}$  for some non-zero constant  $k$ .)



Exercise 5.9.1

Let  $f$  be a differentiable function such that

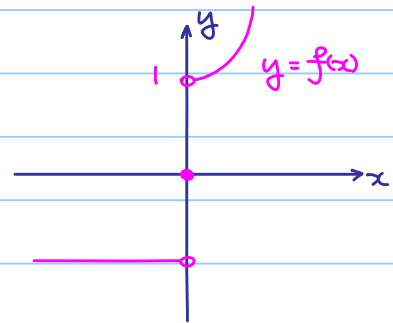
$$f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y) + 3xy(x+y) \quad \forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}.$$

a) Show that  $f'(0) = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x)}{\Delta x}$ .

b) Hence, show that  $f'(x) = f'(0) + 3x^2$ . (In fact,  $f(x) = C + f'(0)x + x^3$  if you know integration.)

Exercise 5.9.2

$$\text{Let } f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ -1 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$



(a) Write down  $f'(x)$  explicitly

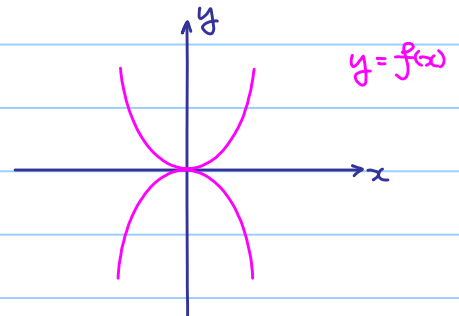
(b) Show that  $f$  is not differentiable at  $x=0$ .

(c) Show that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f'(x) = 0$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f'(x) = 0$ , so  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f'(x) = 0$ .

Therefore,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f'(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f'(x)$  is insufficient to show  $f$  is differentiable at  $x=0$ .

Exercise 5.9.3

$$\text{Let } f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x \in \mathbb{Q} \\ -x^2 & \text{if } x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Q} \end{cases}$$



Show that  $f(x)$  is differentiable only at  $x=0$  and  $f'(0) = 0$ .

Therefore,  $f'(0)$  exists while  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f'(x)$ ,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f'(x)$  are not.

Summary:

- $f$  is differentiable at  $x=x_0$   $\nleftrightarrow$   $f'$  is differentiable at  $x=x_0$
- $\nleftrightarrow$   $f'$  is continuous at  $x=x_0$
- Theorem 5.2.1  $\Downarrow$   $\nleftrightarrow$  Example 5.2.1  $\nleftrightarrow$   $\lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} f'(x)$  exists
- $f$  is continuous at  $x=x_0$   $\nleftrightarrow$  Example 5.9.1
- Definition 4.1.1  $\Downarrow$   $\nleftrightarrow$  Example 3.1.3
- $\lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} f(x)$  exists

Exercise 5.9.3

$$f \text{ is differentiable at } x=x_0 \quad \nleftrightarrow \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f'(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f'(x)$$

Exercise 5.9.2

## § 6 Applications of Differentiation

### 6.1 Rolle's Theorem and Mean Value Theorem

#### Theorem 6.1.1

Let  $f: (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function and  $c \in (a, b)$  such that

- 1)  $f'(c)$  exists
- 2)  $f$  attains maximum (or minimum) at  $x = c$ .

Then, we have  $f'(c) = 0$ .

proof: Assume  $f$  attains maximum at  $x = c$

$$f'(c) \text{ exist} \Rightarrow \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(c+\Delta x) - f(c)}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{f(c+\Delta x) - f(c)}{\Delta x} = f'(c)$$

$$\text{By theorem 3.2.2 : } \frac{f(c+\Delta x) - f(c)}{\Delta x} \leq 0 \text{ for all } \Delta x > 0 \Rightarrow f'(c) = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(c+\Delta x) - f(c)}{\Delta x} \leq 0$$

$$\frac{f(c+\Delta x) - f(c)}{\Delta x} \geq 0 \text{ for all } \Delta x < 0 \Rightarrow f'(c) = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^-} \frac{f(c+\Delta x) - f(c)}{\Delta x} \geq 0$$

$$\therefore f'(c) = 0.$$

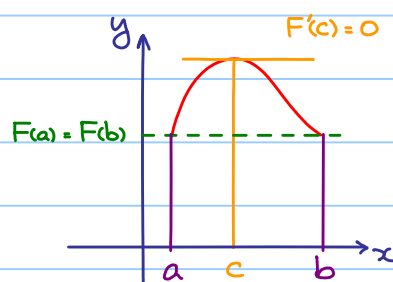
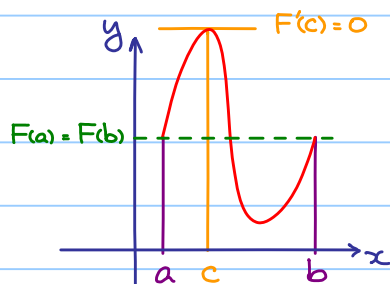
#### Theorem 6.1.2 (Rolle's Theorem)

Let  $F: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function such that

- 1)  $F$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$
- 2)  $F$  is differentiable on  $(a, b)$
- 3)  $F(a) = F(b)$

then there exists  $c \in (a, b)$  such that  $F'(c) = 0$ .

Geometrical meaning:



Idea of proof:

By the Maximum-Minimum Theorem, there exist  $x_m, x_M \in [a, b]$  such that  $F(x_m) \leq F(x) \leq F(x_M)$  for all  $x \in [a, b]$ .

Case 1: Either  $x_m$  or  $x_M$  lies on  $(a, b)$

then  $F'(x_m) = 0$  or  $F'(x_M) = 0$  (By theorem 6.1.1)

Case 2: Both  $x_m$  and  $x_M$  lies on boundary points of  $[a, b]$ ,

By assumption,  $F(a) = F(b)$  which forces that  $F(x)$  is constant on  $[a, b]$   
so  $f'(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in (a, b)$

Theorem 6.1.3 (Mean Value Theorem)

Let  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function such that

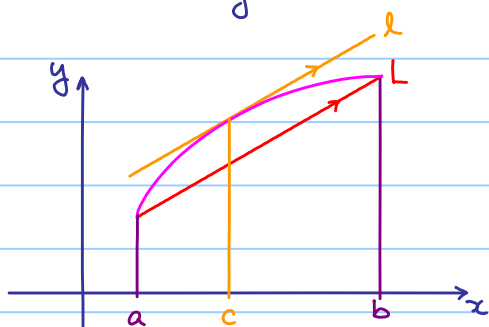
- 1)  $f$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$
- 2)  $f$  is differentiable on  $(a, b)$

then there exists  $c \in (a, b)$  such that  $f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$

↑  
slope of  $l$

↑  
slope of  $L$ .

Geometrical meaning:



Another interpretation:

$$\underbrace{f(b) - f(a)}_{\text{change of } f} = f'(c) \underbrace{(b - a)}_{\text{change of } x}$$

When  $x$  changes from  $a$  to  $b$ , change of  $x = b - a$  and change of  $f = f(b) - f(a)$ , and they are related by the derivative  $f'$  at some point  $c \in (a, b)$ .

Therefore, if we have a control on  $f'$ , then we obtain a control on change of  $f$ .

Idea of proof:

Looking for  $c \in (a, b)$  such that  $f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$

i.e. looking for a solution in  $(a, b)$  of the equation

$$f'(x) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a} = 0.$$



Idea: Realize this as  $F(x)$  and apply Rolle's theorem.

proof:

$$\text{Let } F(x) = f(x) - f(a) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a} (x - a)$$

Check: 1)  $F$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$

2)  $F$  is differentiable on  $(a, b)$

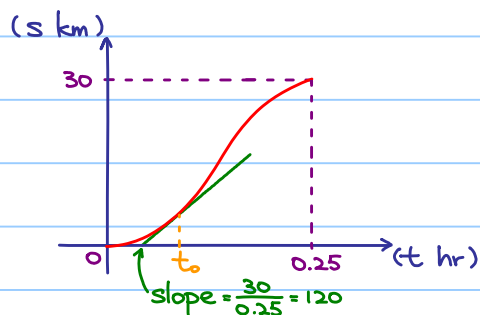
$$3) F(a) = F(b) = 0$$

Apply Rolle's Theorem to  $F$ , the result follows.

Question:

A vehicle is speeding on a highway if its speed  $\geq 120$  km/hr (at some moment)

If the length of the highway is 30 km and if a driver only spent 15 minutes on the highway. Should he be arrested?



By the MVT, there exists  $t_0 \in (0, 0.25)$

such that slope of the tangent at  $t = t_0 = \frac{30}{0.25} = 120$

i.e. instantaneous speed at  $t = t_0 = 120$  km/hr

## 6.2 Applications of Mean Value Theorem

### Example 6.2.1

We know  $\ln 1 = 0$ , how about  $\ln 1.1$ ?

Let  $f(x) = \ln x$ , for  $x > 0$ , which is a differentiable function.

In particular,  $f$  is continuous on  $[1, 1.1]$ ,

$f$  is differentiable on  $(1, 1.1)$ .

Apply MVT,  $\exists c \in (1, 1.1)$  such that  $f(1.1) - f(1) = f'(c)(1.1 - 1)$

$$\ln 1.1 - \ln 1 = \frac{1}{c} \cdot (0.1)$$

$$\ln 1.1 = \frac{1}{10} \cdot \frac{1}{c}$$

Note that  $1 < c < 1.1 = \frac{11}{10}$ , so  $\frac{10}{11} < \frac{1}{c} < 1$  (Control of  $f'$ )

$$\frac{1}{11} < \frac{1}{10} \cdot \frac{1}{c} < \frac{1}{10}$$

$$\therefore 0.909 \approx \frac{1}{11} < \ln 1.1 < \frac{1}{10} = 0.1$$

### Theorem 6.2.1

If  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a differentiable and  $f'(x) = 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

then  $f(x)$  is a constant function

proof: Fix  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ , let  $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{x_0\}$

If  $x > x_0$ , note  $f$  is differentiable everywhere (in particular, on  $(x_0, x)$ )

$\Rightarrow f$  is continuous everywhere (in particular, on  $[x_0, x]$ )

Apply MVT,  $\exists c \in (x_0, x)$  such that

$$f(x_0) - f(x) = \underbrace{f'(c)}_0 (x - x_0) = 0$$

0 by assumption.

$$\text{i.e. } f(x) = f(x_0) \quad \forall x > x_0$$

We have similar result if  $x < x_0$ , the result follows.

### Example 6.2.2

Let  $f(x) = \cos^2 x + \sin^2 x$

$$f'(x) = -2\cos x \sin x + 2\sin x \cos x = 0$$

$\therefore \cos^2 x + \sin^2 x$  is a constant.

In particular,  $f(0) = 1$ , so  $f(x) = \cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1$

### Theorem 6.2.2

If  $f, g: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are differentiable functions such that  $f'(x) = g'(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , then  $f(x) = g(x) + C$ , where  $C$  is a constant.

proof: Let  $h(x) = f(x) - g(x)$

$$\text{Then } h'(x) = f'(x) - g'(x) = 0$$

$$\therefore h(x) = C, \text{ where } C \text{ is a constant. i.e. } f(x) = g(x) + C.$$

Next, we are going to discuss how differentiation helps to find **maximum / minimum points** of a function.

Firstly, we make some preparations:

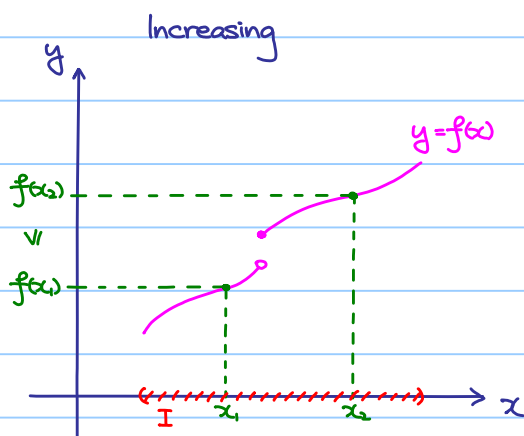
### 6.3 Increasing / Decreasing Functions

#### Definition 6.3.1

Let  $I$  be an interval and let  $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function such that

$$f(x_1) \leq f(x_2) \quad (f(x_1) \geq f(x_2)) \text{ for all } x_1 < x_2.$$

then  $f(x)$  is called an increasing (a decreasing) function.<sup>†</sup>



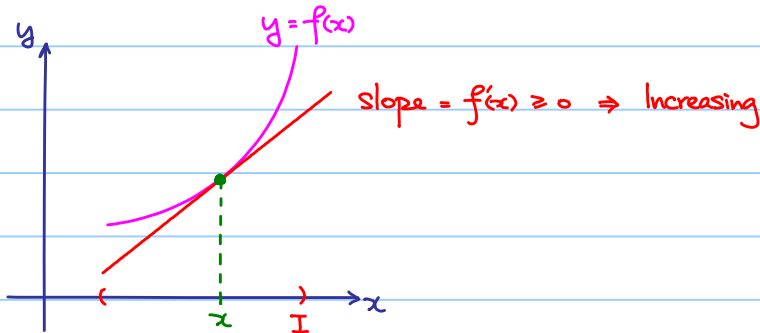
Roughly speaking:  
The larger  $x$  we input  
the larger  $y$  we get!

<sup>†</sup> If we have a strictly inequality, it is called a strictly increasing (decreasing) function.

Theorem 6.3.1

Let  $I$  be an interval and let  $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a differentiable function.

If  $f'(x) \geq 0$  ( $f'(x) \leq 0$ ) for all  $x \in I$  then  $f$  is increasing (decreasing) on  $I$ .



++ If we have strict inequality, then  $f(x)$  is strictly increasing (decreasing) on  $(a, b)$ .

proof:

If  $x_1, x_2 \in I$  with  $x_1 < x_2$ , then  $f$  is continuous on  $[x_1, x_2]$

$f$  is differentiable on  $(x_1, x_2)$ .

Applying MVT to  $f$  on  $[x_1, x_2]$ ,

$$\exists c \in (x_1, x_2) \text{ such that } f(x_2) - f(x_1) = \underbrace{f'(c)}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{(x_2 - x_1)}_{> 0} \geq 0$$

By assumption

Example 6.3.1

$$f(x) = -5x^2 + 80x - 120$$

$$f'(x) = -10x + 80$$

$$f'(x) > 0$$

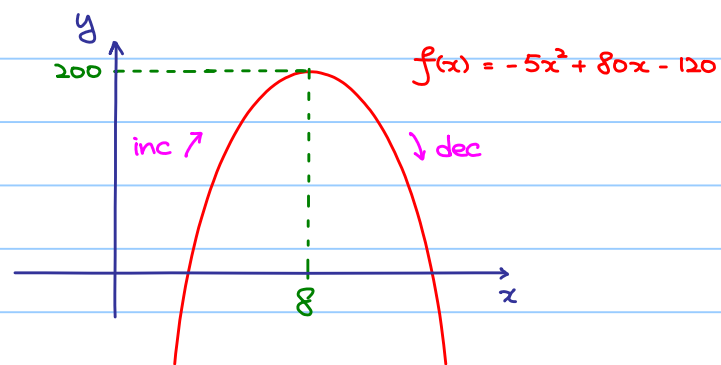
$$-10x + 80 > 0$$

$$x < 8$$

$$f'(x) < 0$$

$$-10x + 80 < 0$$

$$x > 8$$



$\therefore f(x)$  is strictly increasing when  $x < 8$  and

$f(x)$  is strictly decreasing when  $x > 8$ .

Not hard to understand why  $f(x)$  attains maximum when  $x = 8$

and maximum value =  $f(8) = 200$

Note:  $f'(8) = 0$

Remark: Verify the answer by using completing square.

Question:

- 1) If  $f'(x) > 0$  for  $x < a$  and  $f'(x) < 0$  for  $x > a$ ,  
is it enough to say that  $f$  attains maximum at  $x = a$ ?
- 2) If we want to find all extrema,  
is it enough to solve  $f'(x) = 0$ ?

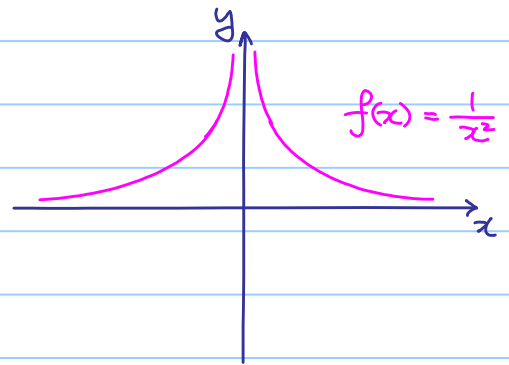
Example 6.3.2

Let  $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$ ,  $x \neq 0$ .

$$f'(x) = -\frac{2}{x^3}$$

$$f'(x) > 0 \text{ for } x < 0$$

$$f'(x) < 0 \text{ for } x > 0$$



$\therefore f(x)$  is **strictly increasing** when  $x < 0$

$f(x)$  is **strictly decreasing** when  $x > 0$

However,  $f(0)$  is NOT well-defined, so there is NO maximum point.

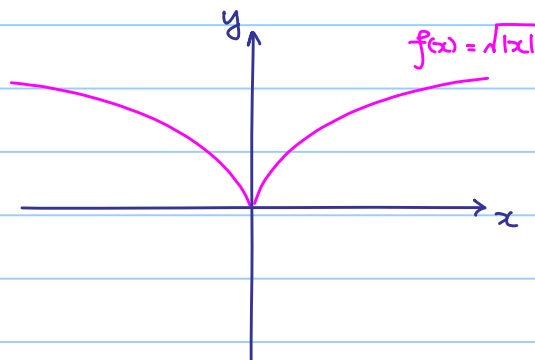


Example 6.3.3

Let  $f(x) = \sqrt{|x|}$

Rewrite:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{x} & \text{if } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \sqrt{-x} & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$



If  $x > 0$ ,  $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ , then  $f'(x) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} > 0$

If  $x < 0$ ,  $f(x) = \sqrt{-x}$ , then  $f'(x) = -\frac{1}{2\sqrt{-x}} < 0$

$\therefore f(x)$  is strictly increasing when  $x > 0$

$f(x)$  is strictly decreasing when  $x < 0$

However,  $\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{f(0+\Delta x) - f(0)}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\sqrt{\Delta x}}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\Delta x}}$  which does NOT exist,

$\Rightarrow \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(0+\Delta x) - f(0)}{\Delta x}$  does NOT exist

$\Rightarrow f'(0)$  does NOT exist

but as we can see  $f$  still attains minimum at  $x=0$ .

$\therefore$  Solving  $f'(x) = 0$  to find max/min is NOT enough

However,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \sqrt{x} = 0$

$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} \sqrt{-x} = 0$

$f(0) = 0$

$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^-} f(x) = f(0) = 0$  and so  $f$  is continuous at  $x=0$

By the first derivative check,  $f(x)$  attains minimum at  $x=0$ .

Answers for both questions 1 and 2 are negative,

so, what is the exact statement of finding an extrema?

## 6.4 First Derivative Check

### Theorem 6.4.1 (First Derivative Check)

Let  $I$  be an open interval and let  $a \in I$ .

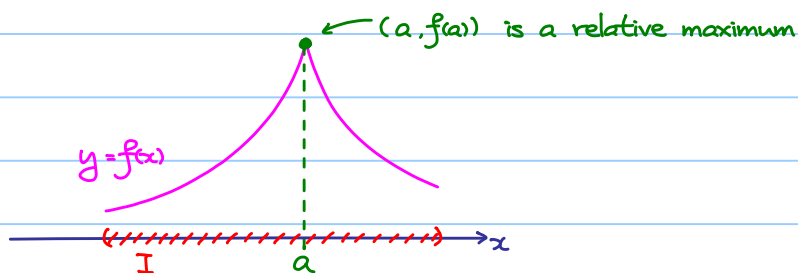
Let  $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function such that

- 1)  $f$  is continuous
- 2)  $f'(x) \geq 0$  ( $f'(x) \leq 0$ ) for all  $x \in I$  with  $x < a$
- 3)  $f'(x) \leq 0$  ( $f'(x) \geq 0$ ) for all  $x \in I$  with  $x > a$

Then  $(a, f(a))$  is a relative maximum (minimum)

Note: We do NOT require the differentiability of  $f$  at  $x=a$ , but only the continuity of  $f$  at  $x=a$ .

Geometrical meaning:



Remember the slogan: Change of sign of  $f'(x)$  at  $x=a$

proof:

Let  $x \in I$  and  $x < a$ .

Note:  $f$  is continuous on  $[x, a]$  and

$f$  is differentiable on  $(x, a)$

apply the MVT, there exists  $c \in (x, a)$  such that

$$f(a) - f(x) = \underbrace{f'(c)}_{\substack{> \\ 0}} \underbrace{(a-x)}_{> 0} \geq 0$$

By assumption

$\therefore f(x) \leq f(a)$  for all  $x \in I$  with  $x < a$

Similarly, we can also show that  $f(x) \leq f(a)$  for all  $x \in I$  with  $x > a$

$\therefore f(x) \leq f(a)$  for all  $x \in I$ , i.e.  $(a, f(a))$  is a relative maximum.

### Example 6.4.1

Prove that  $e^x \geq 1+x$  (i.e.  $e^x - x - 1 \geq 0$ ) for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Let  $f(x) = e^x - x - 1$

(Want to find the global minimum of  $f(x)$  and see if it is  $\geq 0$ .)

$$f'(x) = e^x - 1$$

$f'(x) > 0$  if  $x > 0$  and  $f'(x) < 0$  if  $x < 0$

$f$  is strictly increasing when  $x > 0$  and strictly decreasing when  $x < 0$

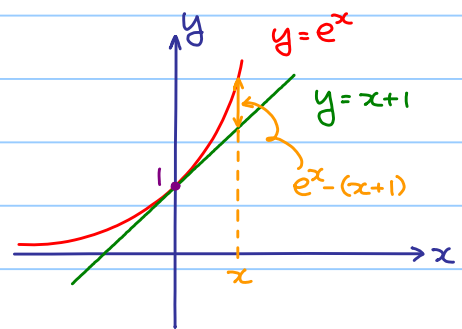
(and  $f$  is continuous at  $x=0$ .)

$f$  attains minimum when  $x=0$  (By 1st derivative check)

(In fact, global minimum, why?)

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore f(x) &\geq f(0) \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R} \quad \text{--- (*)} \\ &= e^0 - 0 - 1 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Note: The equality holds iff  $x=0$



### Definition 6.4.1

If  $f'(a) = 0$ , then  $(a, f(a))$  is said to be a stationary point.

However, a stationary point is NOT necessary to be a relative extrema

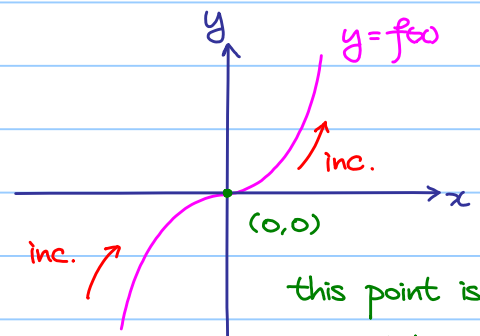
### Example 6.4.2

If  $f(x) = x^3$ , then  $f'(x) = 3x^2$

Note: 1)  $f'(0) = 0$

2)  $f'(x) = 3x^2 > 0$  for  $x \neq 0$

i.e. No change of sign of  $f'(x)$  at  $x=0$ .



this point is called a saddle point

Note: a stationary point is NOT necessary to be a max./min. point!

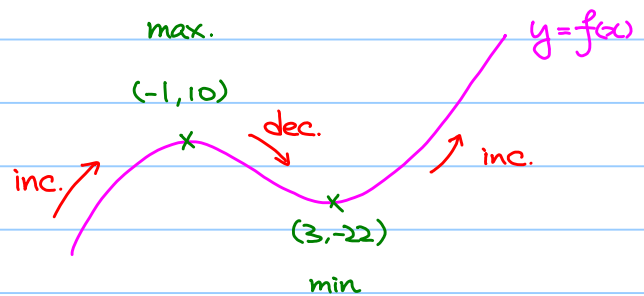
Example 6.4.3

If  $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 - 9x + 5$

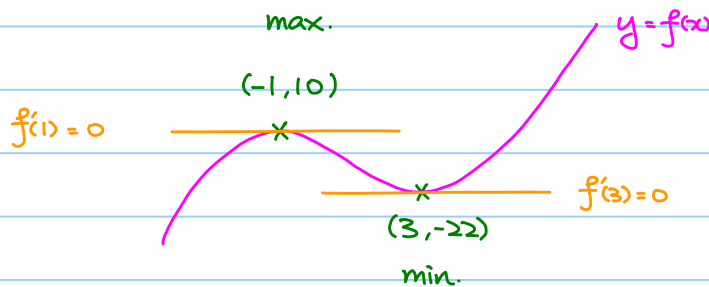
then  $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 6x - 9 = 3(x^2 - 2x - 3) = 3(x-3)(x+1)$

$f'(x) > 0$  if  $x > 3$  or  $x < -1$

$f'(x) < 0$  if  $-1 < x < 3$



Furthermore,



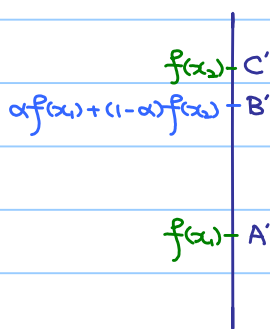
6.5 Second Derivative Check

Definition 6.5.1

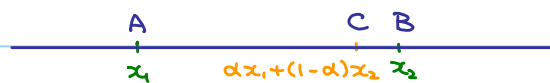
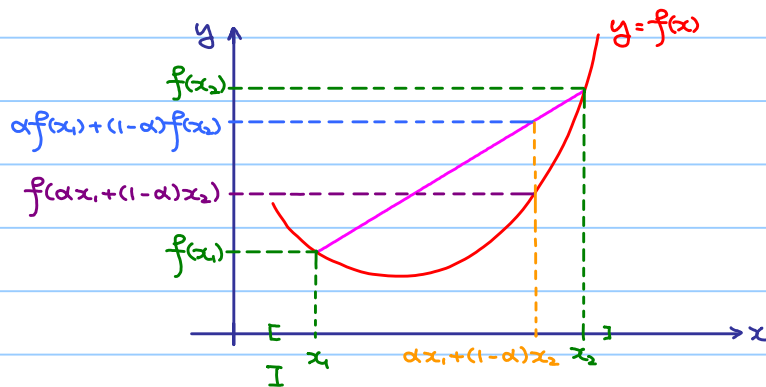
Let  $I$  be an interval and let  $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function.

$f$  is concave up on  $I$  if  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in I$  with  $x_1 < x_2$ ,  $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ , we have

$$f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) \leq \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2)$$



$$A'C : C'B' = (1-\alpha) : \alpha$$



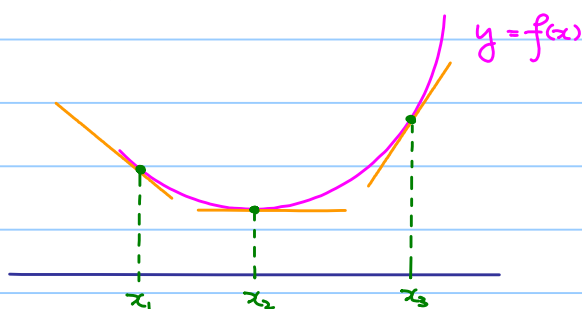
$$AC : CB = (1-\alpha) : \alpha$$

Similarly,  $f$  is concave down on  $I$  if  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in I$  with  $x_1 < x_2$ ,  $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ , we have

$$f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) \geq \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2)$$

Let  $I$  be an interval.  $f''(x) > 0$  for  $x \in I \Rightarrow f'(x)$  is strictly increasing.

Geometrical meaning:



Slope of the tangent line at  $(x, f(x))$  increases as  $x$  increases!  
(NOT  $f(x)$  is increasing!)

Theorem 6.5.1

Let  $I$  be an interval.

If  $f''(x) \geq 0$  ( $f''(x) \leq 0$ )  $\forall x \in I$ , then  $f(x)$  is concave up (down) on  $I$ .

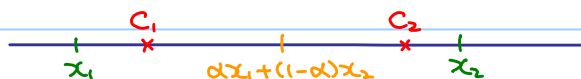
proof:

Suppose that  $x_1, x_2 \in I$  with  $x_1 < x_2$ ,  $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ , then  $x_1 < \alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2 < x_2$

Applying MVT to  $f$  on  $[x_1, \alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2]$  and  $[\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2, x_2]$ ,

$\exists c_1 \in (x_1, \alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2)$  and  $\exists c_2 \in (\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2, x_2)$  s.t.

$$\frac{f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) - f(x_1)}{(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) - x_1} = f'(c_1) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{f(x_2) - f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2)}{x_2 - (\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2)} = f'(c_2)$$



Note that  $f''(x) \geq 0$  on  $I$ ,  $f'$  is increasing on  $I$  and so  $f'(c_1) \leq f'(c_2)$ .

$$\frac{f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) - f(x_1)}{(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) - x_1} \leq \frac{f(x_2) - f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2)}{x_2 - (\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2)}$$

$$(x_2 - x_1) f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) \leq \alpha(x_2 - x_1) f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)(x_2 - x_1) f(x_2)$$

$$f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) \leq \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha) f(x_2)$$

### Theorem 6.5.2 (Second Derivative Check)

Let  $I$  be an open interval and let  $a \in I$

If  $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function such that

1)  $f'(a) = 0$  (i.e.  $(a, f(a))$  is a stationary point.)

2)  $f''(a) < 0$  ( $f''(a) > 0$ )

then  $(a, f(a))$  is a relative maximum (minimum).

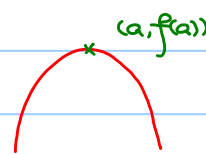
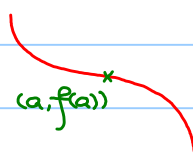
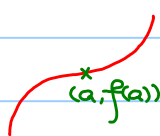
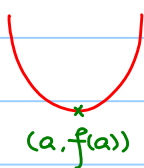
💡 Idea. If  $(a, f(a))$  is a stationary point, we have 4 possible cases:

① Min.

② Saddle point

③ Saddle point

④ Max.



Roughly speaking:  $f''(a) < 0 \Rightarrow f$  is concave down around  $x=a$

: Case ①, ②, ③ are ruled out, and so  $f$  attains maximum at  $x=a$ .

proof.

Given that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f'(x) - f'(a)}{x - a} = f''(a) > 0$ , and  $f'(a) = 0$

$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} \frac{f'(x)}{x - a} = f''(a) < 0$ , so  $f'(x) < 0$  ( $\Rightarrow f$  is strictly dec.) if  $x$  is slightly greater than  $a$ .  
↑ positive

$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} \frac{f'(x)}{x - a} = f''(a) < 0$ , so  $f'(x) > 0$  ( $\Rightarrow f$  is strictly inc.) if  $x$  is slightly smaller than  $a$ .  
↑ negative

The result follows by the first derivative check.

Caution: If  $f''(a) = 0$ , then NO conclusion!

Consider  $f(x) = x^4, x^3, -x^4$

We have  $f'(0) = f''(0) = 0$  in each case, but  $(0, 0)$  is

- min. for the 1st case
- saddle point for the 2nd case.
- max. for the 3rd case

### Example 6.5.1

$$\text{If } f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 - 9x + 5$$

$$\text{then } f'(x) = 3x^2 - 6x - 9 = 3(x^2 - 2x - 3) = 3(x-3)(x+1)$$

$$f'(x) > 0 \text{ if } x > 3 \text{ or } x < -1$$

$$f'(x) < 0 \text{ if } -1 < x < 3$$

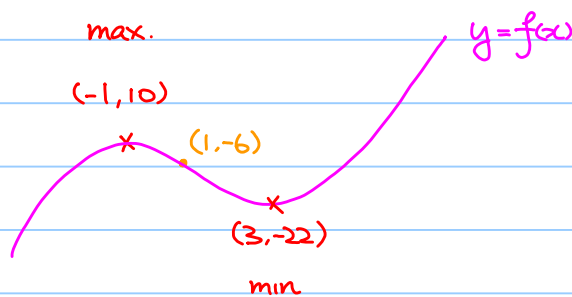
$$f''(x) = 6x - 6$$

$$f''(x) > 0 \text{ if } x > 1$$

$$f''(-1) = 12 < 0$$

$$f''(x) < 0 \text{ if } x < 1$$

$$f''(3) = 12 > 0$$



$$f'(x) \quad \begin{array}{c} -1 \qquad 3 \\ \hline +ve \quad | \quad -ve \quad | \quad +ve \end{array}$$

$$f(x) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{inc.} \quad \text{dec.} \quad \text{inc.} \end{array}$$

$$f''(x) \quad \begin{array}{c} \hline -ve \quad | \quad +ve \end{array}$$

$$f(x) \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{Convex} \quad \text{concave} \end{array}$$

Note: The curve changes from being convex to concave at  $(1, 6)$ .

This point is called a point of inflection.

### Definition 6.5.1

Let  $I$  be an open interval and let  $a \in I$

Let  $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function such that

- 1)  $f$  is continuous
- 2)  $f'(x) > 0$  ( $f'(x) < 0$ ) for all  $x \in I$  with  $x < a$
- 3)  $f'(x) < 0$  ( $f'(x) > 0$ ) for all  $x \in I$  with  $x > a$

then  $(a, f(a))$  is said to be a point of inflection.

Remember the slogan: Change of sign of  $f'(x)$  at  $x = a$

Example 6.5.2

$$f(x) = 12x^5 - 105x^4 + 340x^3 - 510x^2 + 360x - 120$$

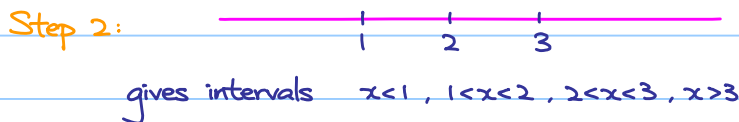
Find the range of  $x$  such that

(1)  $f'(x) > 0$  ,  $f'(x) < 0$

(2)  $f''(x) > 0$  ,  $f''(x) < 0$

Step 1: Find  $f'(x)$  and factorize it.

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= 60x^4 - 420x^3 + 1020x^2 - 1020x + 360 \\ &= 60(x^4 - 7x^3 + 17x^2 - 17x + 6) \\ &= 60(x-1)^2(x-2)(x-3) \quad \text{(Using factor theorem)} \end{aligned}$$



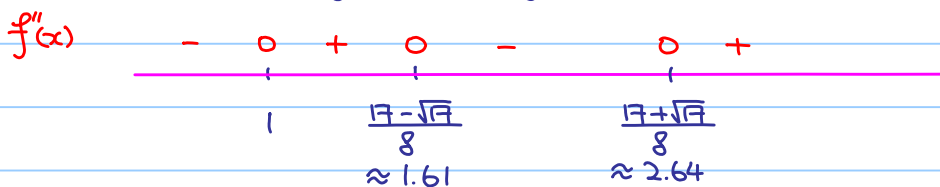
Reason: those factors may change sign at the boundary points of intervals.

Step 3:	$x < 1$	$x = 1$	$1 < x < 2$	$x = 2$	$2 < x < 3$	$x = 3$	$x > 3$
$(x-1)^2$	+	0	+	+	+	+	+
$(x-2)$	-	-	-	0	+	+	+
$(x-3)$	-	-	-	-	-	0	+
$f'(x)$	+	0	+	0	-	0	+

$f(x)$  inc saddle pt. inc. max. dec. min inc.  
 saddle point = (1, -23)      max = (2, -16)      min = (3, -39)

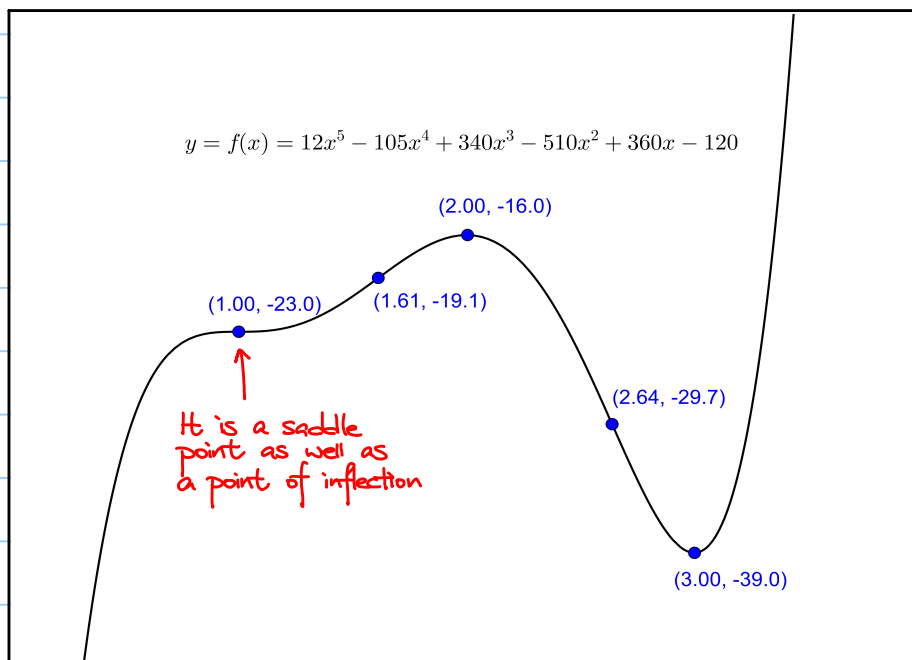
Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} f''(x) &= 240x^3 - 1260x^2 + 2040x - 1020 \\ &= 60(x-1)(4x^2 - 17x + 17) \\ &= 240(x-1) \left[ x - \left( \frac{17+\sqrt{19}}{8} \right) \right] \left[ x - \left( \frac{17-\sqrt{19}}{8} \right) \right] \end{aligned}$$





points of inflection:  $(1, -23)$ ,  $(\frac{17 \pm \sqrt{19}}{8}, f(\frac{17 \pm \sqrt{19}}{8}))$   
 $= (1.61, -19.1)$  or  $(2.64, -29.7)$

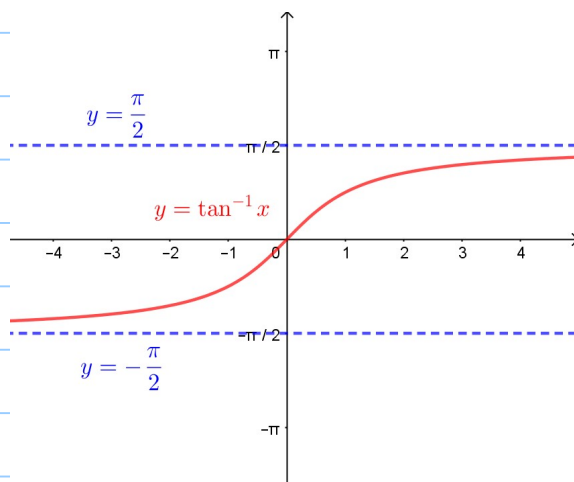


### Exercise 6.5.1

Let  $f(x) = \tan^{-1}x$ . Show that

- $f'(x) > 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$ , so there is no stationary point ( $\Rightarrow$  no saddle point)
- $f$  has a point of inflection at  $x=0$ .

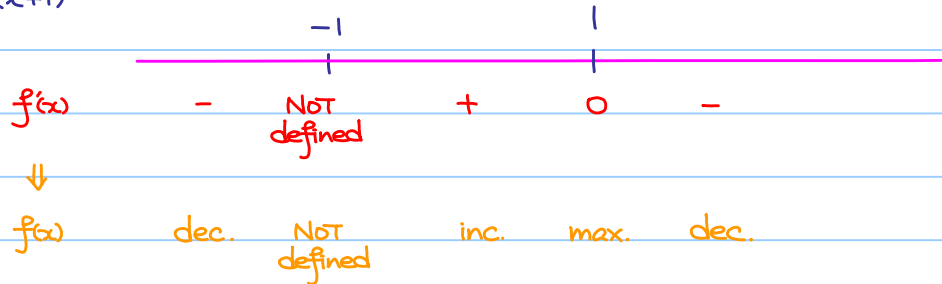
Therefore, saddle point and point of inflection are different concepts.



Example 6.5.3

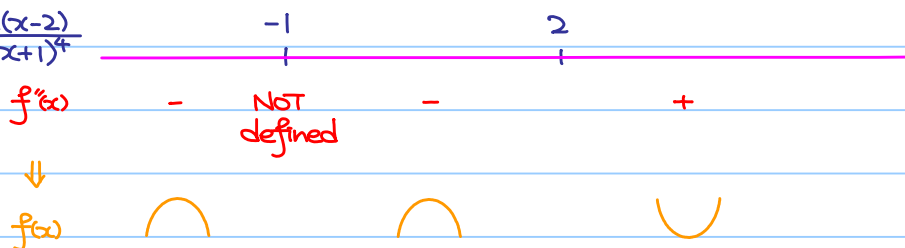
$$f(x) = \frac{x}{(x+1)^2}, \quad x \neq -1.$$

$$f'(x) = \frac{1-x}{(x+1)^3}$$

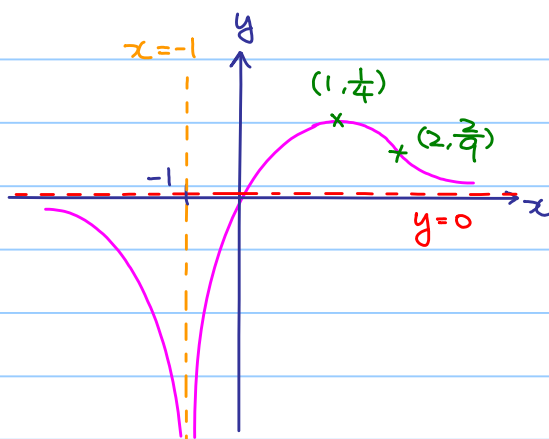


$$\text{max} = (1, \frac{1}{4})$$

$$f''(x) = \frac{2(x-2)}{(x+1)^4}$$



point of inflection:  $(2, \frac{2}{9})$



Note: The graph of  $y=f(x)$  behaves like:

- the vertical line  $x=-1$ , when  $x$  is "near"  $-1$ .
- the horizontal line  $y=0$ , when  $x$  is "near"  $+\infty$  or  $-\infty$ .

In fact,  $x=-1$  is called a vertical asymptote,

$y=0$  is called a horizontal asymptote.

## 6.6 Asymptotes

### Definition 6.6.1

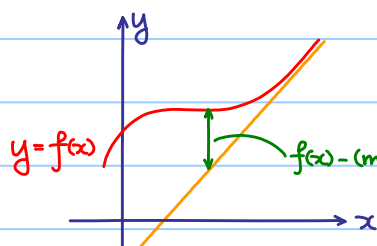
1) If  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x)$  or  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = +\infty$  or  $-\infty$ ,  
then  $x=a$  is said to be a vertical asymptote.

2) If  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = L$  or  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x) = L$ , where  $L \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  
then  $y=L$  is said to be a horizontal asymptote.

Note: It may happen that both  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x)$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x)$  exist  
but they are NOT the same.

3) If  $y=mx+c$  is a straight line such that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) - (mx+c) = 0$  or  $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x) - (mx+c) = 0$ ,  
then the straight line is said to be an oblique asymptote of  $f(x)$ .

Remark: In particular, if  $m=0$ , the asymptote is horizontal



the distance tends to 0

as  $x \rightarrow +\infty$

### Exercise 6.6.1

Prove that

(a) if  $y=mx$  is an oblique asymptote of  $f(x)$  at  $+\infty$ ,

then  $m = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{f(x)}{x}$  and  $c = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) - mx$ ;

(b) if  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{f(x)}{x}$  exists (denoted by  $m$ ) and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) - mx$  exists (denoted by  $c$ ),

then  $y=mx$  is an oblique asymptote of  $f(x)$  at  $+\infty$ .

### Example 6.6.1

Let  $f(x) = \frac{x|x-2|}{x-1}$ ,  $x \neq 1$ .

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x(x-2)}{x-1} & \text{if } x \geq 2 \\ -\frac{x(x-2)}{x-1} & \text{if } x < 2 \text{ and } x \neq 1 \end{cases}$$

(a) Show that  $f$  is NOT differentiable at  $x=2$ .

Hint: Show that  $\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(2+\Delta x) - f(2)}{\Delta x}$  does NOT exist.

$$(b) f'(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x^2 - 2x + 2}{(x-1)^2} & \text{if } x > 2 \\ -\frac{x^2 - 2x + 2}{(x-1)^2} & \text{if } x < 2 \text{ and } x \neq 1 \end{cases}$$

Solve  $f'(x) > 0$  and  $f'(x) < 0$

Ans:  $f'(x) > 0$  when  $x > 2$

$f'(x) < 0$  when  $x < 2$  and  $x \neq 1$

min = (2, 0)

$$(c) f''(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{-2}{(x-1)^3} & \text{if } x > 2 \\ \frac{2}{(x-1)^3} & \text{if } x < 2 \text{ and } x \neq 1 \end{cases}$$

Solve  $f''(x) > 0$  and  $f''(x) < 0$

Ans:  $f''(x) > 0$  when  $1 < x < 2$

$f''(x) < 0$  when  $x > 2$  or  $x < 1$

point of inflection = (2, 0)

(d) vertical asymptote:  $x = 1$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} -\frac{x(x-2)}{x-1} = -\infty$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} -\frac{x(x-2)}{x-1} = +\infty$$

oblique / horizontal asymptote:

① For  $x \geq 2$ ,  $f(x) = \frac{x(x-2)}{x-1}$

$$m = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{f(x)}{x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{x-2}{x-1} = 1$$

$$c = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) - mx = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{x(x-2)}{x-1} - x = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{-x}{x-1} = -1$$

$\therefore y = x - 1$  is an oblique asymptote.

② For  $x < 2$  and  $x \neq 1$ ,  $f(x) = -\frac{x(x-2)}{x-1}$

$$m = \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{f(x)}{x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} -\frac{x-2}{x-1} = -1$$

$$c = \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x) - mx = \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} -\frac{x(x-2)}{x-1} + x = \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{x}{x-1} = 1$$

$\therefore y = -x + 1$  is an oblique asymptote.

(e) x-intercept: Solve  $f(x) = 0$

$$\frac{x|x-2|}{x-1} = 0$$

$$x = 0 \text{ or } 2$$

y-intercept:  $f(0) = 0$ .

(f) Sketch  $y=f(x)$ .

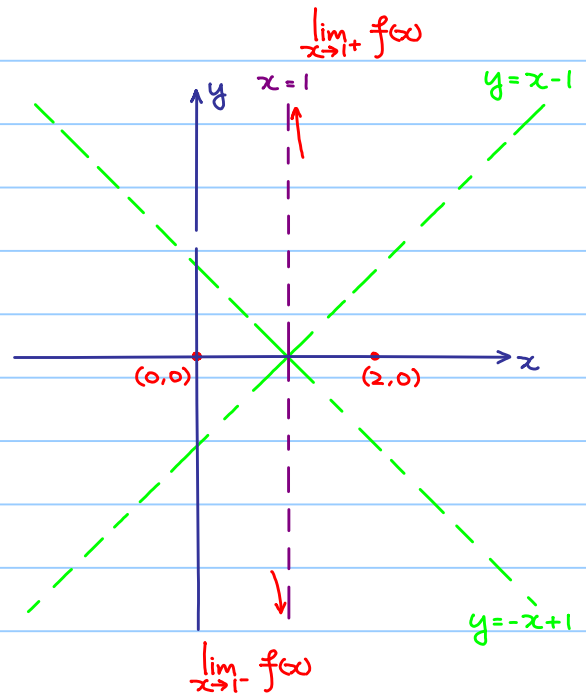
Step 1: draw asymptotes

Step 2: put down  $x$ -intercepts  
and  $y$ -intercept

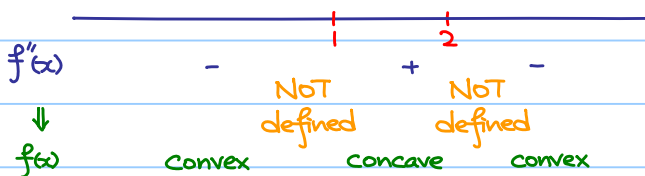
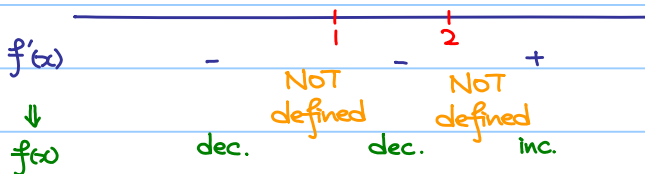
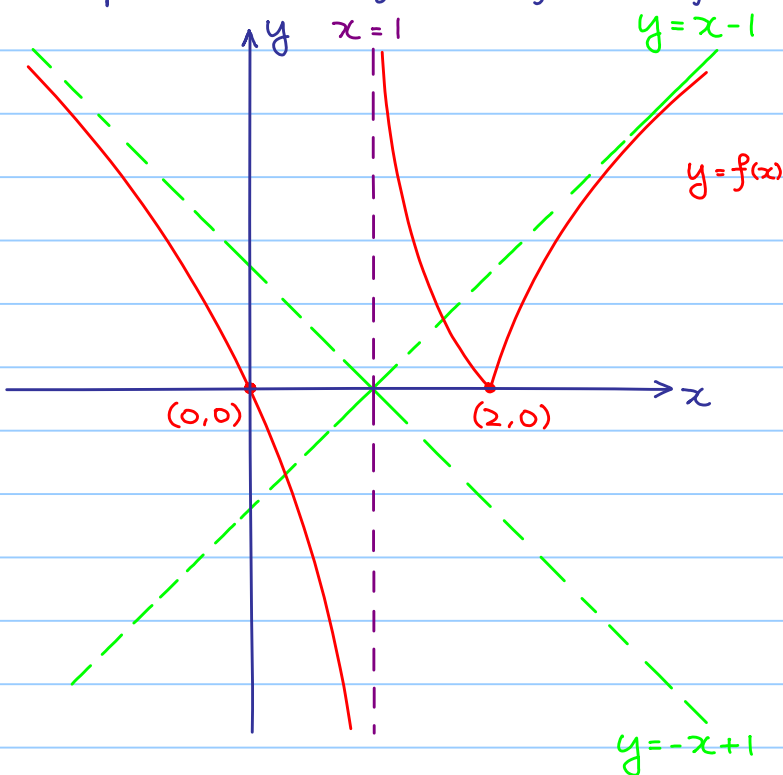
Step 3:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^-} -\frac{x(x-2)}{x-1} = -\infty$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} -\frac{x(x-2)}{x-1} = +\infty$$



Step 4: Use the information  $f'(x)$  and  $f''(x)$



## Curve Sketching :

Goal: Given a function  $f(x)$ , sketch the graph of  $y=f(x)$ .

(Capturing main features)

- x-intercept
- y-intercept
- increasing / decreasing  
saddle point / max. / min
- concave / convex  
point of inflection
- vertical asymptote
- horizontal asymptote
- oblique asymptote

$$\text{solve } f(x) = 0$$

$$\text{y-intercept} = f(0)$$

$$\text{solve } f'(x) > 0 / f'(x) < 0$$

change of sign of  $f'(x)$ ?

$$\text{solve } f''(x) > 0 / f''(x) < 0$$

change of sign of  $f''(x)$ ?

any  $x=a$  with  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x) = \pm\infty$  or  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = \pm\infty$

$$m = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{f(x)}{x}$$

$$c = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) - mx$$

## § 7 Taylor's Theorem and L'Hôpital's Rule

### 7.1 Taylor Polynomials

Let  $f(x)$  be a function with derivatives of all orders on an open interval  $I$ , and  $a \in I$ .

Goal: Can we approximate  $f(x)$  around the point  $x=a$  by a polynomial  $P_n(x)$  of degree  $n$

$$\left. \begin{aligned} f(a) &= P_n(a) \\ f'(a) &= P_n'(a) \\ &\vdots \\ f^{(n)}(a) &= P_n^{(n)}(a) \end{aligned} \right\} n+1 \text{ conditions}$$

i.e.  $f(x)$  and  $P_n(x)$  agree with each other up to  $n$ -th derivative at  $x=a$ .

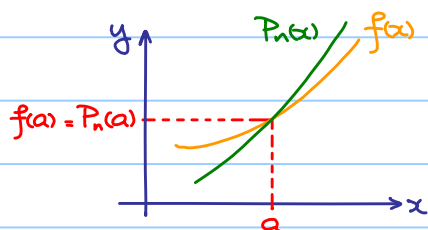
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } P_n(x) &= c_0 + c_1(x-a) + c_2(x-a)^2 + \dots + c_n(x-a)^n \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^n c_k(x-a)^k \end{aligned}$$

$c_0, c_1, \dots, c_n$  are constants to be determined.

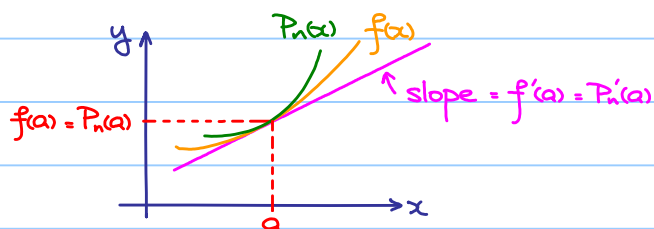
$n+1$  constants.

Remark:  $n+1$  conditions,  $n+1$  constants  $\Rightarrow c_k$ 's are completely determined.

💡 Idea: If  $f(a) = P_n(a)$ , then the graphs of  $f(x)$  and  $P_n(x)$  intersect at  $x=a$ .



Furthermore, if  $f(a) = P_n(a)$ , then the graphs of  $f$  and  $P_n$  share the same tangent line at  $x=a$ .



$f(x)$  and  $P_n(x)$  agree with each other up to  $n$ -th derivative at  $x=a$  is the generalization of the above, hopefully increasing  $n$  (the degree of  $P_n(x)$ ) will give better approximation of  $f(x)$  around  $x=a$ .

To determine  $a_i$ 's :

$$\bullet P_n(x) = C_0 + C_1(x-a) + C_2(x-a)^2 + \dots + C_n(x-a)^n$$

$$f(a) = P_n(a) = C_0$$

$$\bullet P_n'(x) = 1C_1 + 2C_2(x-a) + 3C_3(x-a)^2 + \dots + nC_n(x-a)^{n-1}$$

$$f'(a) = P_n'(a) = 1C_1$$

$$C_1 = \frac{f'(a)}{1!}$$

$$\bullet P_n''(x) = 2 \cdot 1C_2 + 3 \cdot 2C_3(x-a) + \dots + n \cdot (n-1)C_n(x-a)^{n-2}$$

$$f''(a) = P_n''(a) = 2!C_2$$

$$C_2 = \frac{f''(a)}{2!}$$

Repeating the process, in general, we have  $C_k = \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}$   $k=0,1,2,\dots,n$

Definition 7.1.1

Let  $I$  be an open interval and  $a \in I$ .

Let  $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function such that  $f(a), f'(a), \dots, f^{(n)}(a)$  exist.

$$P_n(x) = f(a) + \frac{f'(a)}{1!}(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \dots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x-a)^n$$
$$= \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k$$

is called the Taylor polynomial of order  $n$  generated by  $f$  at  $x=a$

In particular,  $y = P_1(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a)$  is the tangent line of  $f(x)$  at  $x=a$ .



### Example 7.1.1

Let  $f(x) = e^x$ , find the Taylor polynomials  $P_n(x)$  generated by  $f$  at  $x=0$ .

Note:  $f^{(k)}(x) = e^x$  and  $f^{(k)}(0) = 1$  for  $k=0, 1, 2, \dots, n$

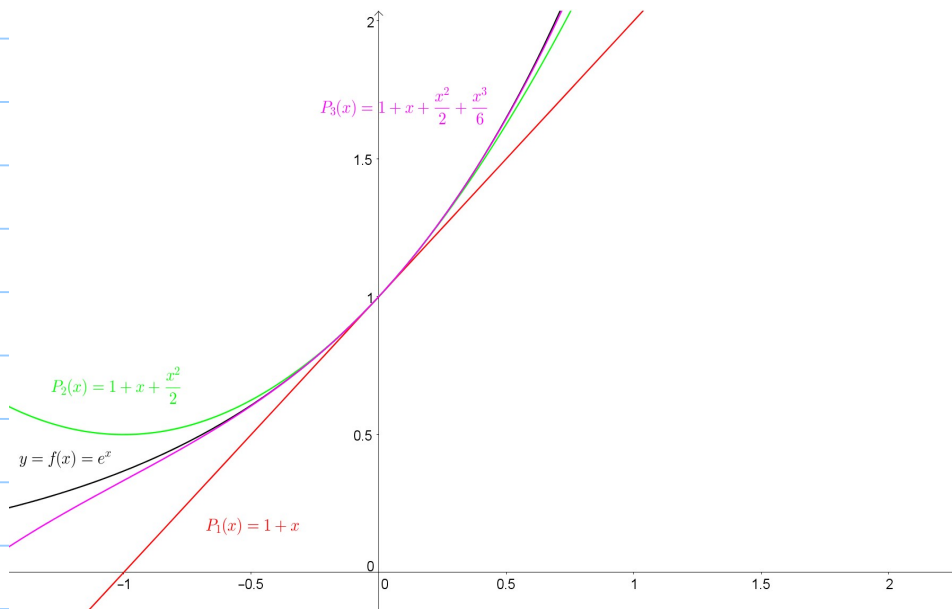
$$P_0(x) = f(0) = 1$$

$$P_1(x) = f(0) + \frac{f'(0)}{1!}x = 1 + x$$

$$P_2(x) = f(0) + \frac{f'(0)}{1!}x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2}$$

$$P_3(x) = f(0) + \frac{f'(0)}{1!}x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{f^{(3)}(0)}{3!}x^3 = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{6}$$

In particular,  $y = P_1(x) = 1 + x$  is the tangent line of  $f(x)$  at  $x=0$ .



$$\text{In general, } P_n(x) = f(0) + \frac{f'(0)}{1!}x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \dots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n$$

$$= 1 + x + \frac{1}{2!}x^2 + \dots + \frac{1}{n!}x^n$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{1}{k!}x^k$$

### Example 7.1.2

Let  $f(x) = \cos x$ , find the Taylor polynomials  $P_n(x)$  generated by  $f$  at  $x=0$ .

Note:  $f(x) = \cos x$                        $f'(x) = -\sin x$

$f''(x) = -\cos x$                        $f'''(x) = \sin x$

$f^{(4)}(x) = \cos x$                        $f^{(5)}(x) = -\sin x$

⋮

⋮

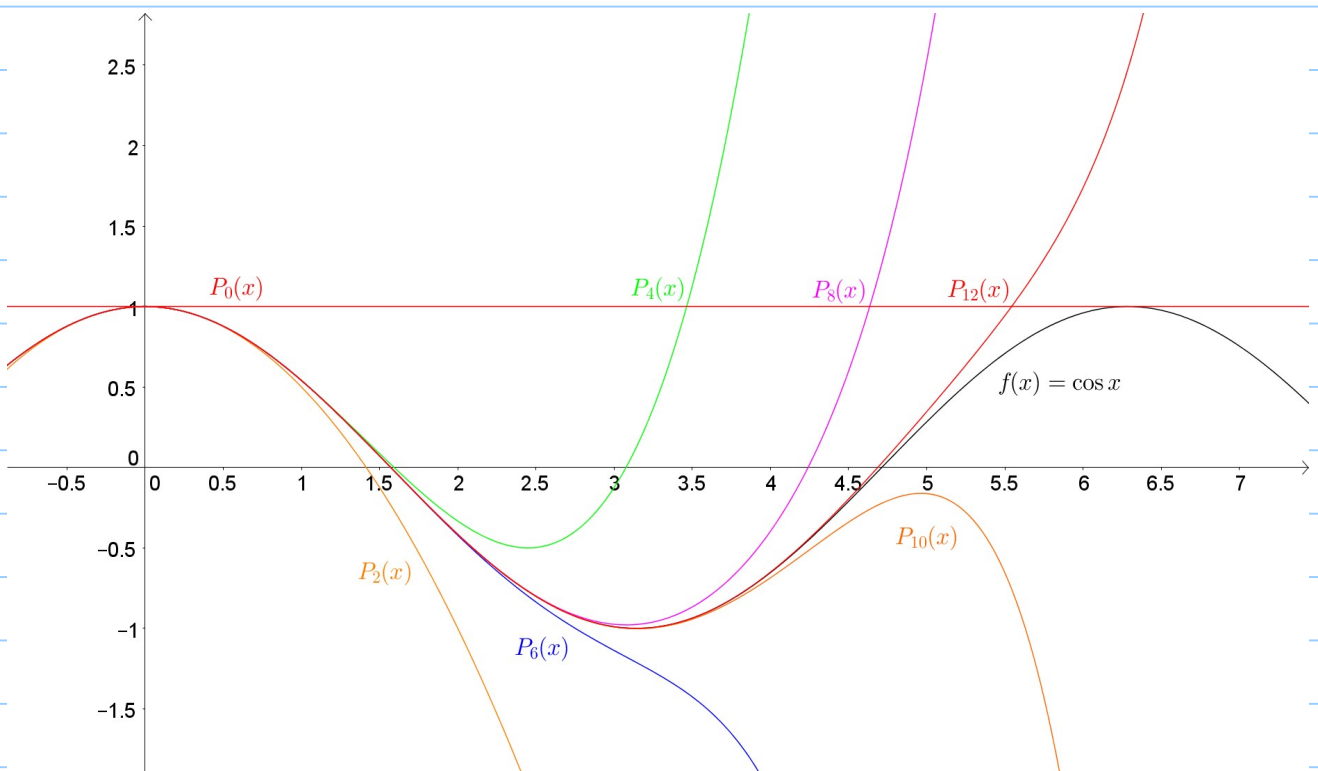
$f^{(2n)}(x) = (-1)^n \cos x$

$f^{(2n+1)}(x) = (-1)^{n+1} \sin x$

∴  $f^{(2n)}(0) = (-1)^n$

$f^{(2n+1)}(0) = 0$

∴  $P_{2n}(x) = P_{2n+1}(x) = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}$



### Exercise 7.1.1

Find the Taylor polynomials  $P_n(x)$  generated by  $f$  at  $x=0$  if  $f(x) =$

a)  $\sin x$

b)  $\frac{1}{1-x}$

c)  $\ln(1+x)$

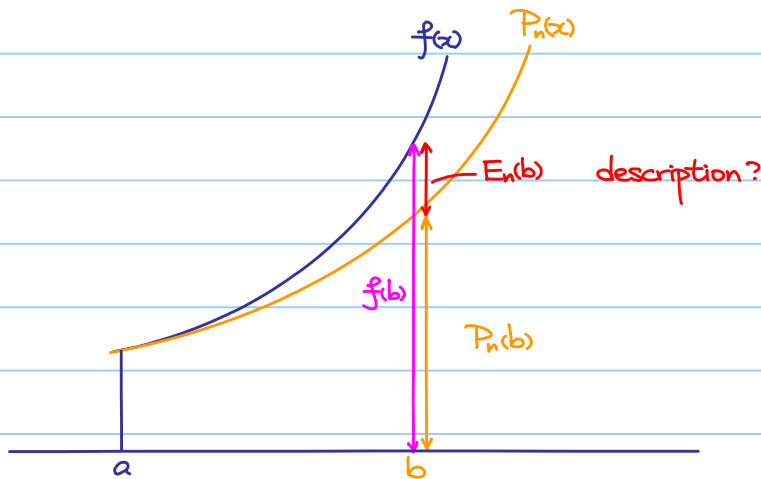


Idea :

We want to approximate  $f(b)$  by  $P_n(b)$ , there is an error term  $E_n(b) = f(b) - P_n(b)$

The error term tells us how good / bad our approximation is !

Therefore, we need a description of the error term  $E_n(b)$ .



## 7.2 Taylor's Theorem

Theorem 7.2.1 (Taylor's Theorem)

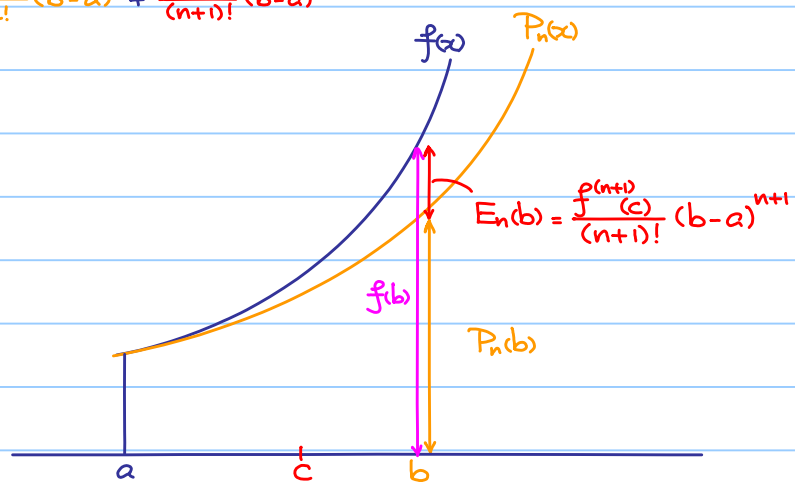
If  $f$  and its first  $n$  derivatives  $f', f'', \dots, f^{(n)}$  are continuous on the closed interval between  $a$  and  $b$ ,  $f^{(n)}$  is differentiable on the open interval between  $a$  and  $b$ ,

then there exists  $c$  between  $a$  and  $b$  such that

$$f(b) = f(a) + \frac{f'(a)}{1!}(b-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(b-a)^2 + \dots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(b-a)^n + \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c)}{(n+1)!}(b-a)^{n+1}$$

$$= P_n(b) + E_n(b)$$

i.e. the error can be described by the  $(n+1)$ -th derivative of  $f$ .



Remark: If  $n=0$ ,

$$f(b) = f(a) + f'(c)(b-a)$$

$$= P_0(b) + E_0(b)$$

It is just Mean Value Theorem !

Therefore, Taylor's theorem can be regarded as a generalization of the mean value theorem.

proof:

Assume  $b > a$ .

$$\text{Let } F(x) = f(x) - P_n(x) - \frac{f(b) - P_n(b)}{(b-a)^{n+1}} (x-a)^{n+1}$$

Check:  $F$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$

$F$  is differentiable on  $(a, b)$

$$F(a) = F(b) = 0$$

Apply Rolle's Theorem,  $\exists c_1 \in (a, b)$  such that  $F'(c_1) = 0$

Check:  $F'$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$

$F'$  is differentiable on  $(a, b)$

$$F'(a) = F'(c_1) = 0$$

Apply Rolle's Theorem,  $\exists c_2 \in (a, c_1)$  such that  $F''(c_2) = 0$

Repeating the process:  $\exists c_{n+1} \in (a, c_n)$  such that  $F^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1}) = 0$

$$\text{Note: } F^{(n+1)}(x) = f^{(n+1)}(x) - (n+1)! \frac{f(b) - P_n(b)}{(b-a)^{n+1}}$$

$$0 = F^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1}) = f^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1}) - (n+1)! \frac{f(b) - P_n(b)}{(b-a)^{n+1}}$$
$$\frac{f^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1})}{(n+1)!} = \frac{f(b) - P_n(b)}{(b-a)^{n+1}}$$

$$\therefore f(b) = P_n(b) + \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1})}{(n+1)!} (b-a)^{n+1}$$

The proof for the case  $a > b$  is similar.

### Example 7.2.1

Approximate  $\cos 0.1$

Let  $f(x) = \cos x$ ,

$P_5(x) (=P_4(x)) = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!}$  Taylor polynomials of degree 5 generated by  $f$  at  $x=0$ .

$$\cos 0.1 = f(0.1) \approx P_5(0.1) = 0.995004166 \dots$$

By Taylor's Theorem  $f(0.1) = P_5(0.1) + \frac{f^{(6)}(c)}{6!} (0.1)^6$   $c \in (0, 0.1)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Absolute Error} &= |E_5(0.1)| = \left| \frac{f^{(6)}(c)}{6!} (0.1)^6 \right| \\ &\leq \frac{1}{6!} (0.1)^6 \approx 1.38 \times 10^{-9} \\ &\text{Very small.} \end{aligned}$$

Note:  $f^{(6)}(x) = -\cos x$   
 $\Rightarrow |f^{(6)}(c)| \leq 1$   
get rid of  $c$ !

### Example 7.2.2

Let  $f(x) = \frac{1}{1-x}$

Suppose  $P_n(x)$  is Taylor polynomial of order  $n$  generated by  $f$  at 0.

Then  $P_n(x) = 1 + x + x^2 + \dots + x^n$

Note:  $f(0.1) = \frac{1}{1-0.1} = 1.111 \dots$

$$P_n(0.1) = 1 + 0.1 + 0.1^2 + \dots + 0.1^n = 1.111 \dots 1$$

$E_n(0.1) = f(0.1) - P_n(0.1)$  is getting closer and closer to 0 as  $n$  increases

Good Approximation

$$f(2) = \frac{1}{1-2} = -1$$

$$P_n(2) = 1 + 2 + 2^2 + \dots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1$$

$E_n(2) = f(2) - P_n(2)$  is NOT getting closer and closer to 0 as  $n$  increases.

Bad Approximation

### 7.3 Taylor's Series



Idea:

For any fixed  $b$ ,  $E_n(b)$  becomes a sequence of real numbers.

If  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} E_n(b) = 0$ , that means the error is getting closer and closer to 0 as we increase the number of terms to approximate  $f(x)$ .

However, it is not always true as we can see in example 7.2.2.

#### Definition 7.3.1

Let  $I$  be an open interval,  $a \in I$  and let  $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function.

Suppose that  $f^{(n)}(a)$  exists for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , then we define the Taylor series generated by  $f$  at  $x=a$  to be

$$T(x) = f(a) + \frac{f'(a)}{1!}(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \dots + \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k + \dots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k$$
$$= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P_n(x)$$

#### Example 7.3.1

Let  $f(x) = \frac{1}{1-x}$

Then the Taylor series generated by  $f$  at 0 is

$$T(x) = 1 + x + x^2 + \dots + x^k + \dots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k$$

Question: What is the relation between  $f(x)$  and  $T(x)$ ?

#### Theorem 7.3.1

Let  $I$  be an interval, let  $a$  be an interior point of  $I$ , and let  $f: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function.

Suppose that  $f^{(n)}(a)$  exists for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,

$P_n(x)$  is the Taylor polynomial of order  $n$  generated by  $f$  at  $x=a$  and  $E_n(x) = f(x) - P_n(x)$ .

If  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} E_n(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in I$ , then we have

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(x) - P_n(x) = 0$$

$$f(x) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P_n(x) = T(x)$$

ie.  $f(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \dots + \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k + \dots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k$  for all  $x \in I$

In this case, we say that the Taylor series converges to  $f(x)$  for all  $x \in I$

### Example 7.3.2

Let  $f(x) = \cos x$

$$f(x) = \cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + E_{2n+1}(x)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \parallel & & \parallel \\ P_{2n}(x) = P_{2n+1}(x) & & E_{2n}(x) \end{array}$$

$$0 \leq |E_{2n+1}(x)| = \left| \frac{f^{(2n+2)}(c(x))}{(2n+2)!} x^{2n+2} \right| \leq \frac{|x|^{2n+2}}{(2n+2)!}$$

$$\text{Note: } \left| \frac{f^{(2n+2)}(c(x))}{(2n+2)!} \right| = |\cos(c(x))| \leq 1$$

By theorem 2.4.4,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{|x|^{2n+2}}{(2n+2)!} = 0$

By sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |E_{2n+1}(x)| = 0$  and hence  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} E_{2n+1}(x) = 0$ .

$$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + \dots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!} x^{2k} \quad \text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}$$

Frequently used Taylor series:

$$1) \frac{1}{1-x} = 1 + x + x^2 + \dots + x^n + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x^n, \quad |x| < 1$$

$$2) \frac{1}{1+x} = 1 - x + x^2 - \dots + (-x)^n + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-x)^n, \quad |x| < 1$$

$$3) e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \dots + \frac{x^n}{n!} + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!}, \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$$

$$4) \sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}, \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$$

$$5) \cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{(2n)!}, \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$$

$$6) \ln(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \dots + (-1)^{n+1} \frac{x^n}{n} + \dots = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1} x^n}{n}, \quad \forall -1 < x \leq 1$$

### Example 7.3.3 (NOT Rigorous)

Suppose  $f(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \dots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x-a)^n + \dots$   
in an interval  $I$  and  $a$  lies in the interior of  $I$ .

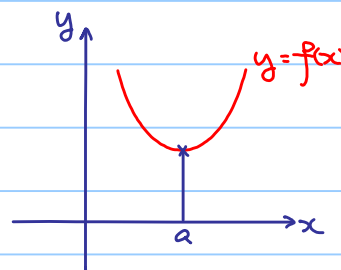
If we know  $f'(a) = 0$  and  $f''(a) > 0$ ,

then if  $x \sim a$ ,

$$f(x) \approx f(a) + \cancel{f'(a)(x-a)} + \underbrace{\frac{f''(a)}{2!}}_0 (x-a)^2$$

locally, like a parabola opening upward!

It suggests why  $f(x)$  attains minimum at  $x=a$ .



How about  $f''(a) = 0$ ?

### 7.4 Manipulation of Taylor Series

Without caring the convergence, we have

#### Example 7.4.1

1) (Addition)

$$\cos x + \sin x = \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots\right) + \left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots\right) = 1 + x - \frac{x^2}{2!} - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots$$

2) (Subtraction)

$$\cos x - \sin x = \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots\right) - \left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots\right) = 1 - x - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots$$

3) (Product)

$$\begin{aligned} \cos x \sin x &= \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots\right) \left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots\right) \\ &= \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots\right) x + \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots\right) \left(-\frac{x^3}{3!}\right) + \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots\right) \left(\frac{x^5}{5!}\right) + \dots \\ &= x - \frac{x^3}{2!} + \frac{x^5}{4!} - \dots \\ &\quad - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{2!3!} - \dots \\ &\quad + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots \\ &= x - \frac{2}{3}x^3 + \frac{2}{15}x^5 - \dots \end{aligned}$$



#### 4) (Composition)

$$e^{\sin x} = 1 + \left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots\right) + \frac{1}{2!} \left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots\right)^2 + \frac{1}{3!} \left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots\right)^3 + \dots$$

$$= 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \dots$$

#### 5) (Differentiation)

$$\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} + \dots$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \sin x = \frac{d}{dx} \left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} + \dots\right)$$

$$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + \dots$$

#### 6) (Integration)

$$\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots$$

$$\int \sin x \, dx = \int \left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots\right) dx$$

$$-\cos x = \left(\frac{x^2}{2!} - \frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^6}{6!} - \dots\right) + C$$

putting  $x=0$ ,

$$-1 = C$$

$$\therefore -\cos x = -1 + \frac{x^2}{2!} - \frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^6}{6!} - \dots$$

#### 7) (Division)

Let  $\frac{\sin x}{\cos x} = a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots$

$$\therefore \sin x = \cos x (a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots)$$

$$x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots = \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \dots\right) (a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots)$$

$$= a_0 - \frac{a_0}{2!} x^2 + \frac{a_0}{4!} x^4 - \dots$$

$$+ a_1 x - \frac{a_1}{2!} x^3 + \frac{a_1}{4!} x^5 - \dots$$

$$+ a_2 x^2 - \frac{a_2}{2!} x^4 + \frac{a_2}{4!} x^6 - \dots$$

$$+ a_3 x^3 - \frac{a_3}{2!} x^5 + \frac{a_3}{4!} x^7 - \dots$$

Compare coefficients of  $x^r$  for  $r=0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$ :

$$\begin{cases} a_0 = 0 \\ a_1 = 1 \\ -\frac{a_0}{2!} + a_2 = 0 \\ -\frac{a_1}{2!} + a_3 = -\frac{1}{3!} \\ \vdots \end{cases} \quad \therefore a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1, a_2 = 0, a_3 = \frac{1}{3}, \dots$$

$$\tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} = x + \frac{1}{3} x^3 + \dots$$

## 7.5 Indeterminate Form $\frac{0}{0}$ and L'hôpital's Rule

Example 7.5.1 (NOT Rigorous)

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\sin x}{x} &= \frac{x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots}{x} \\ &= 1 - \underbrace{\frac{x^2}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{5!} - \dots}_{\text{terms involves } x}\end{aligned}$$

It suggests  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$  (How do we know  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} 1 - \frac{x^2}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{5!} - \dots = 0$  ?  
There are infinitely many terms !)

$$\begin{aligned}\text{In general, } f(x) &= f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \dots \\ g(x) &= g(a) + g'(a)(x-a) + \frac{g''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \dots\end{aligned}$$

Suppose  $f(a) = g(a) = 0$  and  $f'(a), g'(a) \neq 0$

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \dots}{g'(a)(x-a) + \frac{g''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \dots} \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f'(a) + \text{terms involves } (x-a)}{g'(a) + \text{terms involves } (x-a)} = \frac{f'(a)}{g'(a)}\end{aligned}$$

The formal statement : L'hôpital's Rule

Consider  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$  and suppose  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)$  exist.

Case 1 : If  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) \neq 0$ , then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)}{\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)}$

Case 2 : If  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) = 0$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) \neq 0$ , then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$  does NOT exist. (e.g.  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{x}{x-1}$ )

Case 3 : If  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = 0$ , then we do NOT know whether  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$  exist !

$$\text{e.g. } \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x^2}{x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x = 0,$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x^2}{x^2} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} 1 = 1,$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x}{x^2} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{x} \text{ does not exist.}$$

We call it indeterminate form  $\frac{0}{0}$ .

### Theorem 7.5.1 (L'Hôpital's Rule)

Suppose that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) = 0$ ,  $I$  is an open interval containing  $a$ ,

$f$  and  $g$  are differentiable on  $I \setminus \{a\}$ , and  $g'(x) \neq 0$  on  $I \setminus \{a\}$ .

If  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)}$  exists, then

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)}$$

(Furthermore, if  $f'(x)$  and  $g'(x)$  are continuous at  $a$  and  $g'(a) \neq 0$ ,

then  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f'(x) = f'(a)$  and  $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g'(x) = g'(a)$

$$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} = \frac{f'(a)}{g'(a)})$$

### Example 7.5.2

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} \quad \left(\frac{0}{0}\right) \quad - (*)$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos x}{1} \quad - (**)$$

$$= \frac{1}{1}$$

$$= 1$$

Logic: limit  $(**)$  exists  $\Rightarrow$  limit  $(*)$  exists

### Example 7.5.3

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1 - \cos x}{x^2} \quad \left(\frac{0}{0}\right)$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{2x} \quad \left(\frac{0}{0}\right)$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos x}{2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}$$

### Example 7.5.4 (Non-example)

Clearly,  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{2x+3}{x-1}$  does NOT exist.

However, some may misuse L'Hôpital's rule:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{2x+3}{x-1}$$

$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} \frac{2}{1}$  X Since the above limit is NOT in the indeterminate form  $\frac{0}{0}$

$$= 2$$

Example 7.5.4 (L'Hopital's rule fails)

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x^2 \sin(\frac{1}{x})}{\sin x} \quad (\frac{0}{0})$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{2x \sin(\frac{1}{x}) - \cos(\frac{1}{x})}{\cos x} \quad \text{and this limit does not exist.}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{However, } \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x^2 \sin(\frac{1}{x})}{\sin x} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x \sin(\frac{1}{x})}{(\frac{\sin x}{x})} \\ &= \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x \sin(\frac{1}{x})}{\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x}} \\ &= \frac{0}{1} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

## 7.6 Indeterminate Form $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$ , $\infty \cdot 0$ , $\infty - \infty$

- L'hôpital's Rule can also be applied to  $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$
- L'hôpital's Rule can also be applied to left hand limit or right hand limit

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} \quad , \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)}$$

- L'hôpital's Rule can also be applied to limits at infinities

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} \quad , \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)}$$

Example 7.6.1

$$\begin{aligned} &\lim_{x \rightarrow \frac{\pi}{2}^-} \frac{\sec x}{1 + \tan x} \quad (\frac{\infty}{\infty}) \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow \frac{\pi}{2}^-} \frac{\sec x \tan x}{\sec^2 x} \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow \frac{\pi}{2}^-} \sin x \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Example 7.6.2

$$\begin{aligned} &\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{\ln x}{2\sqrt{x}} \quad (\frac{\infty}{\infty}) \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{\frac{1}{x}}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}} \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Indeterminate Form  $\infty \cdot 0$

Idea: Converting to  $\frac{0}{0}$  or  $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$

Example 7.6.3

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} x \sin \frac{1}{x} \quad (\infty \cdot 0)$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{\sin \frac{1}{x}}{\frac{1}{x}} \quad \begin{array}{l} \downarrow \text{convert} \\ \text{to} \\ (\frac{0}{0}) \end{array}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{-\frac{1}{x^2} \cos \frac{1}{x}}{-\frac{1}{x^2}}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \cos \frac{1}{x}$$

$$= 1$$

Alternative method:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} x \sin \frac{1}{x} \quad (\infty \cdot 0)$$

$$= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\sin h}{h} \quad (\frac{0}{0})$$

$$= 1$$

Let  $h = \frac{1}{x}$ ,

As  $x \rightarrow +\infty$ ,  $h \rightarrow 0^+$

Example 7.6.4

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \sqrt{x} \ln x \quad (\infty \cdot 0)$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\ln x}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}} \quad \begin{array}{l} \downarrow \text{convert} \\ \text{to} \\ (\frac{\infty}{\infty}) \end{array}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\frac{1}{x}}{-\frac{1}{2} x^{-\frac{3}{2}}}$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} -2\sqrt{x}$$

$$= 0$$

Remark: Why don't we try  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \sqrt{x} \ln x = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\sqrt{x}}{\left(\frac{1}{\ln x}\right)} \quad (\frac{0}{0})$  ?

Indeterminate Form  $\infty - \infty$

Idea: Converting to  $\frac{0}{0}$  or  $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$

Example 7.6.5

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \left( \frac{1}{\sin x} - \frac{1}{x} \right) \quad (\infty - \infty)$$

$$= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x - \sin x}{x \sin x} \quad \begin{array}{l} (\frac{0}{0}) \\ \downarrow \text{convert} \\ \text{to} \end{array}$$

$$\text{Ex: } \begin{array}{l} \vdots \\ = 0 \end{array}$$

## 7.7 Indeterminate Form $1^\infty, 0^0, \infty^0$

Indeterminate Form  $1^\infty, 0^0, \infty^0$

Idea: Taking  $\ln$ , converting to  $\frac{0}{0}$  or  $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$

### Example 7.7.1

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} x^{\frac{1}{1-x}}$  ( $1^\infty$ )

$$\text{Let } y = x^{\frac{1}{1-x}}$$

$$\ln y = \frac{\ln x}{1-x}$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} \ln y = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} \frac{\ln x}{1-x} \quad \left(\frac{0}{0}\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \ln(\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} y) &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} \frac{\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)}{-1} \\ &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\ln(\lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} x^{\frac{1}{1-x}}) = -1$$

$$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow 1^+} x^{\frac{1}{1-x}} = e^{-1}$$

### Example 7.7.2

Find  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} x^{\frac{1}{x}}$  ( $\infty^0$ )

$$\text{Let } y = x^{\frac{1}{x}}$$

$$\ln y = \frac{\ln x}{x}$$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \ln y = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{\ln x}{x} \quad \left(\frac{\infty}{\infty}\right)$$

$$\ln(\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} y) = \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \frac{\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)}{1}$$

$$\ln(\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} x^{\frac{1}{x}}) = 0$$

$$\therefore \lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} x^{\frac{1}{x}} = e^0 = 1$$

### Exercise 7.7.1

Show that  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{x}\right)^x = e$  by L'Hopital's rule.

## § 8 Indefinite Integration

### 8.1 Antiderivatives

#### Definition 8.1.1

A function  $F(x)$  is said to be an antiderivative of  $f(x)$  if  $F'(x) = f(x)$ .

The process of finding antiderivatives is called indefinite integration.

#### Example 8.1.1

If  $f(x) = 2x$ ,  $F(x) = x^2$ ,

then we have  $F'(x) = f(x)$ , so  $F(x)$  is an antiderivative of  $f(x)$ .

However, consider  $F(x) = x^2 + C$ , where  $C$  is a constant.

Then, we still have  $F'(x) = f(x)$ .

Therefore, antiderivative of a function  $f(x)$  is NOT unique.

That is why we call "an" antiderivative instead of "the" antiderivative.

Natural question: If  $F(x)$  and  $G(x)$  are antiderivatives of  $f(x)$ ,  
what is the relation between them?

Answer:  $F(x)$  and  $G(x)$  differ by a constant.

proof: Suppose  $F'(x) = G'(x) = f(x)$

Let  $H(x) = F(x) - G(x)$

Then  $H'(x) = F'(x) - G'(x) = 0$

$\therefore H(x)$  is a constant function, i.e.  $H(x) = C$  for some constant  $C$ .

i.e.  $F(x) = G(x) + C$

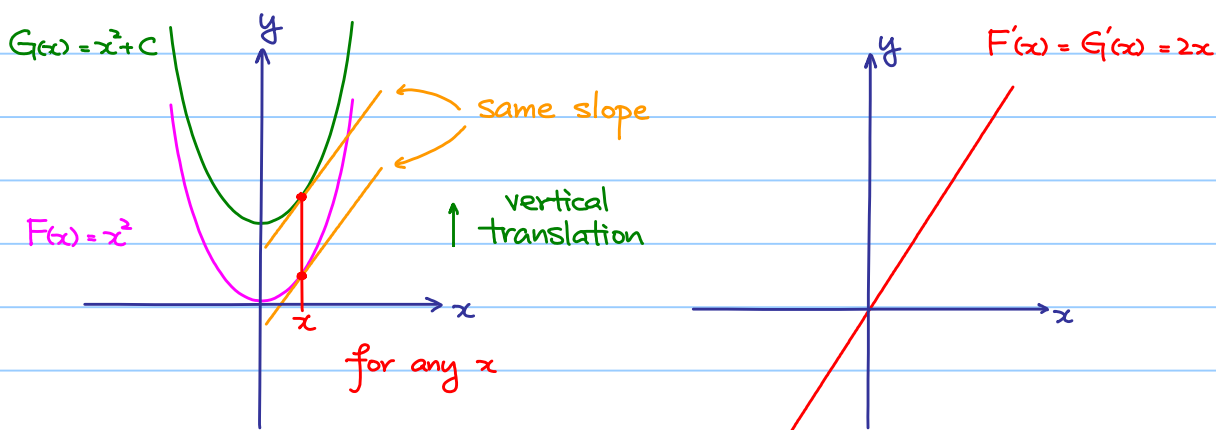
(Refer to theorem 6.2.2)

Therefore, antiderivative of a function  $f(x)$  is NOT unique,  
but it is unique up to a constant.

Example 8.1.2

If  $f(x) = 2x$ ,  $F(x) = x^2$

then we have  $F'(x) = f(x)$ , so  $F(x) = x^2$  is an antiderivative of  $f(x) = 2x$  and all antiderivatives of  $f(x)$  must be of the form  $x^2 + C$ .



If  $F(x)$  is an antiderivative of  $f(x)$ , we write

$$\int f(x) dx = F(x) + C$$

integrand

integral symbol

variable of integration

Example 8.1.2

$$\int 2x dx = x^2 + C$$

Note: When we write  $\int f(x) dx = F(x) + C$ , it should be regarded as a class of functions.

Furthermore,  $\frac{d}{dx} \int f(x) dx = \frac{d}{dx} (F(x) + C) = f(x)$  no matter what  $C$  is.



## 8.2 Rules of Indefinite Integration

### Theorem 8.2.1

1)  $\int k \, dx = kx + C$ , for a constant  $k$ .

2)  $\int x^n \, dx = \frac{1}{n+1} x^{n+1} + C$ , for all  $n \neq -1$ .

3)  $\int \frac{1}{x} \, dx = \ln|x| + C$

4)  $\int e^x \, dx = e^x + C$

5)  $\int \cos x \, dx = \sin x + C$

6)  $\int \sin x \, dx = -\cos x + C$

7)  $\int \frac{1}{1+x^2} \, dx = \tan^{-1}x + C$

proof:

Derivative of RHS = Integrand on LHS

### Theorem 8.2.2

1)  $\int k f(x) \, dx = k \int f(x) \, dx$

2)  $\int f(x) \pm g(x) \, dx = \int f(x) \, dx \pm \int g(x) \, dx$

Remark: We are proving two classes of functions are the same.

proof:

1)  $\frac{d}{dx} (\text{LHS}) = \frac{d}{dx} (\int k f(x) \, dx) = k f(x)$

$$\frac{d}{dx} (\text{RHS}) = \frac{d}{dx} (k \int f(x) \, dx) = k \frac{d}{dx} \int f(x) \, dx = k f(x)$$

$\therefore$  (By theorem 6.2.2) LHS = RHS + C

$\int k f(x) \, dx = k \int f(x) \, dx$  (The constant C is dropped since we are comparing two classes of functions.)

2) Similarly, the result follows by  $\frac{d}{dx} (\int f(x) \pm g(x) \, dx) = \frac{d}{dx} (\int f(x) \, dx \pm \int g(x) \, dx) = f(x) \pm g(x)$ .

### Example 8.2.1

$$\int 2x^5 - 3x^2 + 7x + 5 \, dx$$

$$= 2 \int x^5 \, dx - 3 \int x^2 \, dx + 7 \int x \, dx + 5 \int dx$$

$\int dx$  means  $\int 1 \, dx$

$\int$  still there,

No need to add + C !

$$= 2 \left( \frac{x^6}{6} \right) - 3 \left( \frac{x^3}{3} \right) + 7 \left( \frac{x^2}{2} \right) + 5x + C$$

$$= \frac{x^6}{3} - x^3 + \frac{7x^2}{2} + 5x + C$$

Example 8.2.2

$$\begin{aligned} & \int \frac{x^3 - 5}{x} dx \\ &= \int x^2 - \frac{5}{x} dx \\ &= \frac{x^3}{3} - 5 \ln|x| + C \end{aligned}$$

Example 8.2.3

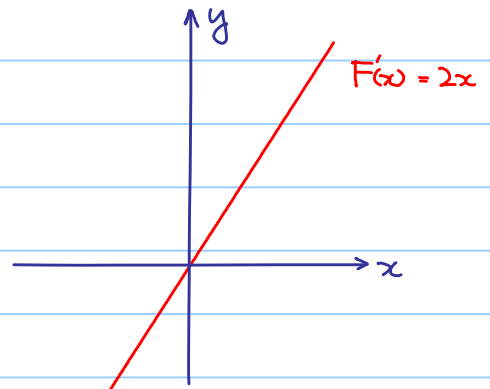
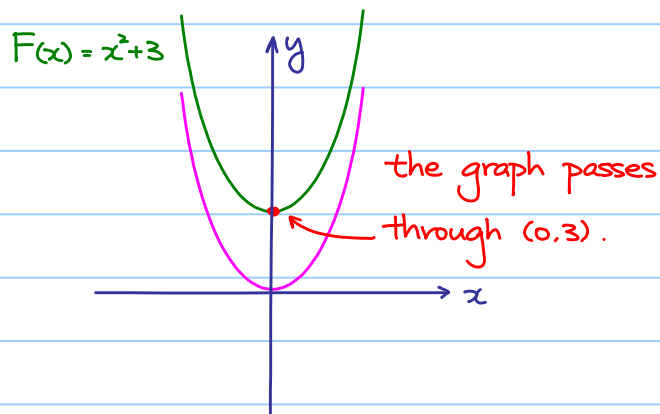
Find a function  $F(x)$  such that  $F(0) = 3$  and  $F'(x) = 2x$ .

$$F'(x) = 2x$$

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= \int 2x dx \\ &= x^2 + C \end{aligned}$$

$$F(0) = 0^2 + C = 3 \Rightarrow C = 3$$

$$\therefore F(x) = x^2 + 3$$



### 8.3 Integration by Substitution

Question :  $\int (2x+1)^{10} dx = ?$

Hard to integrate by expanding the polynomial.

Solution : Integration by Substitution

Theorem 8.3.1

$$\int f(u(x)) u'(x) dx = \int f(u) du \quad \text{OR: } \int f(u) \frac{du}{dx} dx = \int f(u) du$$

proof:

$$\frac{d}{dx} \int f(u(x)) u'(x) dx = f(u(x)) u'(x)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx} \int f(u) du &= \frac{d}{du} \int f(u) du \frac{du}{dx} \quad (\text{Chain Rule}) \\ &= f(u(x)) \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \int f(u(x)) u'(x) dx = \frac{d}{dx} \int f(u) du$$

$$\therefore \int f(u(x)) u'(x) dx = \int f(u) du$$

Example 8.3.1

$$\int (2x+1)^{10} dx = ?$$

$$\text{Let } u(x) = 2x+1 \quad u'(x) = 2$$

$$f(u) = u^{10} \quad f(u(x)) = (2x+1)^{10}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \int (2x+1)^{10} dx &= \frac{1}{2} \int \underbrace{(2x+1)^{10}}_{f(u(x))} \cdot \underbrace{2}_{u'(x)} dx = \frac{1}{2} \int \underbrace{u^{10}}_{f(u)} du \\ &= \frac{1}{22} u^{11} + C = \frac{1}{22} (2x+1)^{11} + C \end{aligned}$$

But, usually we write,

$$\int (2x+1)^{10} dx$$

$$= \int u^{10} \cdot \frac{1}{2} du$$

$$= \frac{1}{22} u^{11} + C$$

$$= \frac{1}{22} (2x+1)^{11} + C$$

$$\text{Let } u = 2x+1$$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 2$$

$$dx = \frac{1}{2} du$$

(called differential form, can be defined rigorously)

Example 8.3.2

$$\begin{aligned} & \int e^{ax} dx \\ &= \int e^u \cdot \frac{1}{a} du \\ &= \frac{1}{a} e^u + C \\ &= \frac{1}{a} e^{ax} + C \end{aligned}$$

Let  $u = ax$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = a$$

$$dx = \frac{1}{a} du$$

Example 8.3.3

$$\begin{aligned} & \int 6x(4x^2+3)^7 dx \\ &= \int 6(4x^2+3)^7 x dx \\ &= \int 6u^7 \cdot \frac{1}{8} dx \\ &= \frac{6}{8} \cdot \frac{1}{8} u^8 + C \\ &= \frac{3}{32} (4x^2+3)^8 + C \end{aligned}$$

Let  $u = 4x^2+3$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 8x$$

$$x dx = \frac{1}{8} du$$

Some write

$$\begin{aligned} & \int 6x(4x^2+3)^7 dx \\ &= \int 6(4x^2+3)^7 x dx \\ &= \int 6(4x^2+3)^7 \cdot \frac{1}{8} d(4x^2+3) \\ &= \frac{6}{8} \cdot \frac{1}{8} (4x^2+3)^8 + C \\ &= \frac{3}{32} (4x^2+3)^8 + C \end{aligned}$$

$$d(4x^2+3) = 8x dx$$

$$x dx = \frac{1}{8} d(4x^2+3)$$

Example 8.3.4

$$\begin{aligned} & \int \frac{(\ln x)^2}{x} dx, \quad x > 0 \\ & \int \frac{(\ln x)^2}{x} dx \\ &= \int u^2 du \\ &= \frac{1}{3} u^3 + C \\ &= \frac{1}{3} (\ln x)^3 + C \end{aligned}$$

Let  $u = \ln x$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{1}{x}$$

$$\frac{1}{x} dx = du$$

Question: How to make a guess of  $u(x)$ ?

Integration by Substitution:  $\int f(u(x)) u'(x) dx = \int f(w) du$

Example:  $\int \frac{(\ln x)^2}{x} dx = \int (\ln x)^2 \cdot \frac{1}{x} dx$  Let  $u = \ln x$

Realize the integrand as a product of parts and make a guess of  $u(x)$  such that one part can be realized as a function  $f(w)$ , another part is  $u'(x)$ .

### Exercise 8.3.1

1) Show that  $\int \frac{1}{ax+b} dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln |ax+b| + C$ . Hint: Let  $u = ax+b$

2) Evaluate

a)  $\int x^3 e^{x^4} dx$  Hint: Let  $u = x^4$  Ans:  $\frac{1}{4} e^{x^4} + C$

b)  $\int 6x \sqrt{x^2+3} dx$  Hint: Let  $u = x^2+3$  Ans:  $2(x^2+3)^{\frac{3}{2}} + C$

### Integration of Exponential Functions:

Recall:  $\int e^{kx} dx = \frac{1}{k} e^{kx} + C$

In general:  $\int a^x dx = ?$  for  $a > 0$

Recall:  $a^x = e^{\ln a^x} = e^{(\ln a)x}$

OR: Recall that  $\frac{d}{dx} a^x = a^x \ln a$

$\therefore \int a^x dx = \int e^{(\ln a)x} dx$

so  $\frac{d}{dx} \frac{a^x}{\ln a} = a^x$ , and  $\int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\ln a} + C$

$= \frac{1}{\ln a} e^{(\ln a)x} + C$

$= \frac{a^x}{\ln a} + C$

### Integration of Logarithmic Functions:

$\int \ln x dx = ?$  for  $x > 0$

Exercise:  $\frac{d}{dx} x \ln x - x$

Ans:  $\ln x$  !

Therefore,  $\int \ln x dx = x \ln x - x + C$

Problem: How do we know  $\frac{d}{dx} x \ln x - x = \ln x$  in advance?

(Make a guess of antiderivative of  $\ln x$  directly)

Any direct way to find an antiderivative of  $\ln x$ ? (Yes, later!)

### Example 8.3.5 (Constant issue)

$\int (x+1)^2 dx$  let  $u = x+1$

$\int (x+1)^2 dx$

$= \int u^2 du$   $du = dx$

$= \int x^2 + 2x + 1 dx$

$= \frac{1}{3} u^3 + C$

$= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + x^2 + x + C$

$= \frac{1}{3} (x+1)^3 + C$

$= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + x^2 + x + \frac{1}{3} + C$

seems to be different!

Ans: This  $C$  is NOT that  $C$ !

## Integration of Rational Functions :

Rational Functions : a quotient of two polynomials

$$\text{Rational Function} \rightarrow R(x) = \frac{p(x)}{q(x)} \begin{array}{l} \leftarrow \text{polynomials} \\ \leftarrow \text{polynomials} \end{array}$$

Simplest case :  $\deg q(x) = 1$  i.e.  $q(x) = ax + b$  where  $a \neq 0$ .

$$\bullet \int \frac{p(x)}{ax+b} dx$$

By long division,  $p(x) = (ax+b)u(x) + R$

$$\frac{p(x)}{ax+b} = u(x) + \frac{R}{ax+b}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} ax+b \overline{) p(x)} \\ \underline{\phantom{ax+b} R} \\ \phantom{ax+b} \phantom{p(x)} \end{array}$$

$$\text{Then } \int \frac{p(x)}{ax+b} dx = \int u(x) + \frac{R}{ax+b} dx$$

We know how to integrate!

Example 8.3.6

$$\begin{aligned} & \int \frac{x^2+3x+5}{x+1} dx \\ &= \int x+2 + \frac{3}{x+1} dx \\ &= \frac{x^2}{2} + 2x + 3 \ln|x+1| + C \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} x+2 \\ x+1 \overline{) x^2+3x+5} \\ \underline{x^2+x} \phantom{+5} \\ 2x+5 \\ \underline{2x+2} \\ 3 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore x^2+3x+5 = (x+1)(x+2) + 3$$

Exercise : Evaluate  $\int \frac{6x^2-5x+1}{3x-2} dx$

$$\frac{x^2+3x+5}{x+1} = x+2 + \frac{3}{x+1}$$

$$\text{Ans : } x^2 - \frac{x}{3} + \frac{1}{9} \ln|3x-2| + C$$

Next case :  $\deg q(x) = 2$  i.e.  $q(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  where  $a \neq 0$ .

If  $\deg p(x) \geq 2$ , by long division,  $\int \frac{p(x)}{ax^2+bx+c} dx = \int u(x) + \frac{rx+s}{ax^2+bx+c} dx$

↑  
polynomial

Just focus on  $\int \frac{rx+s}{ax^2+bx+c} dx$

$$\begin{array}{r} u(x) \\ ax^2+bx+c \overline{) p(x)} \\ \underline{\phantom{ax^2+bx+c} rx+s} \end{array}$$

Recall :  $\Delta = b^2 - 4ac$

We further consider 3 subcases :

(i)  $\Delta > 0$       (ii)  $\Delta = 0$       (iii)  $\Delta < 0$

(i)  $\Delta > 0$ ,  $g(x) = ax^2 + bx + c = (m_1x + n_1)(m_2x + n_2)$

Express  $\frac{rx+s}{ax^2+bx+c}$  into the form  $\frac{A}{m_1x+n_1} + \frac{B}{m_2x+n_2}$ .

$$\text{Then } \int \frac{rx+s}{ax^2+bx+c} dx = \int \frac{A}{m_1x+n_1} + \frac{B}{m_2x+n_2} dx$$

We know how to integrate!

Example 8.3.7

$$\int \frac{5x-7}{x^2-2x-3} dx$$

$$\text{Note: } \frac{5x-7}{x^2-2x-3} = \frac{5x-7}{(x-3)(x+1)}$$

$$\text{Suppose } \frac{5x-7}{(x-3)(x+1)} \equiv \frac{A}{x-3} + \frac{B}{x+1}$$

$$\Rightarrow 5x-7 \equiv A(x+1) + B(x-3)$$

$$\Rightarrow A=2, B=3.$$

$$\int \frac{5x-7}{x^2-2x-3} dx = \int \frac{2}{x-3} + \frac{3}{x+1} dx = 2 \ln|x-3| + 3 \ln|x+1| + C$$

Exercise: Evaluate  $\int \frac{40}{x(200-x)} dx$

$$\text{Ans: } \frac{1}{5} (\ln|x| - \ln|200-x|) + C = \frac{1}{5} \ln \left| \frac{x}{200-x} \right| + C$$

(ii)  $\Delta = 0$ ,  $g(x) = ax^2 + bx + c = (mx+n)^2$

Express  $\frac{rx+s}{ax^2+bx+c}$  into the form  $\frac{A}{(mx+n)^2} + \frac{B}{mx+n}$ .

$$\text{Then } \int \frac{rx+s}{ax^2+bx+c} dx = \int \frac{A}{(mx+n)^2} + \frac{B}{mx+n} dx$$

We know how to integrate!

Example 8.3.8

$$\int \frac{2x-1}{(x-2)^2} dx$$

$$\text{Suppose } \frac{2x-1}{(x-2)^2} \equiv \frac{A}{(x-2)^2} + \frac{B}{x-2}$$

$$\Rightarrow 2x-1 \equiv A + B(x-2)$$

$$\Rightarrow A=3, B=2$$

$$\int \frac{2x-1}{(x-2)^2} dx = \int \frac{3}{(x-2)^2} + \frac{2}{x-2} dx = \frac{-3}{x-2} + 2 \ln|x-2| + C$$

Exercise: Evaluate  $\int \frac{4x+2}{(2x-1)^2} dx$

$$\text{Ans: } \frac{-2}{2x-1} + \ln|2x-1| + C$$

(iii)  $\Delta < 0$ ,  $g(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  cannot be factorized as a product of two linear factors

$$\int \frac{1}{x^2 + a^2} dx \quad \text{let } x = au$$

$$= \int \frac{1}{a^2 u^2 + a^2} a du \quad dx = a du$$

$$= \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{1}{u^2 + 1} du$$

$$= \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} u + C$$

$$= \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + C$$

Example 8.3.9

$$\int \frac{1}{x^2 + 2x + 5} dx$$

$$= \int \frac{1}{(x+1)^2 + 2^2} dx \quad (\text{Completing square})$$

$$= \int \frac{1}{u^2 + 2^2} du \quad \text{let } u = x+1 \quad (\text{or let } x+1 = 2t, \text{ what happens?})$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{u}{2} + C \quad du = dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{x+1}{2} + C$$

Example 8.3.10

$$\int \frac{4x+7}{x^2+2x+5} dx$$

$$\text{Note: } d(x^2+2x+5) = (2x+2) dx$$

$$= \int \frac{2(2x+2)+3}{x^2+2x+5} dx$$

$$\text{and } 4x+7 = 2(2x+2)+3$$

$$= 2 \int \frac{2x+2}{x^2+2x+5} dx + 3 \int \frac{1}{x^2+2x+5} dx$$

$$= 2 \ln(x^2+2x+5) + 3 \left( \frac{1}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{x+1}{2} \right) + C$$

$$= 2 \ln(x^2+2x+5) + \frac{3}{2} \tan^{-1} \frac{x+1}{2} + C$$

Integration of Trigonometric Functions :

•  $\int \tan x dx$  and  $\int \cot x dx$

$$\int \tan x dx$$

$$= \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} dx \quad \text{let } u = \cos x$$

$$= \int -\frac{1}{u} du \quad \frac{du}{dx} = -\sin x$$

$$= -\ln|u| + C \quad -du = \sin x dx$$

$$= -\ln|\cos x| + C$$

$$= \ln|\sec x| + C$$



$$\int \cot x \, dx$$

$$= \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin x} \, dx \quad \text{let } u = \sin x$$

Ex: :

$$= \ln |\sin x| + C$$

•  $\int \sec x \, dx$  and  $\int \csc x \, dx$ ,  $t$ -substitution

$t$ -substitution

$$\text{Let } t = \tan \frac{x}{2}$$

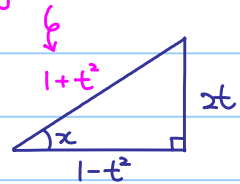
Idea: We can express all trigonometric functions in terms of  $t$ .

$$\text{Note: } \tan x = \frac{2 \tan \frac{x}{2}}{1 - \tan^2 \frac{x}{2}} = \frac{2t}{1-t^2} \quad \text{and so } \cot x = \frac{1-t^2}{2t}$$

$$\therefore \sin x = \frac{2t}{1+t^2} \quad \text{and so} \quad \csc x = \frac{1+t^2}{2t}$$

$$\cos x = \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2} \quad \sec x = \frac{1+t^2}{1-t^2}$$

By Pyth. thm.



Therefore, all trigonometric functions in terms of  $t$ .

$$\text{Note: } t = \tan \frac{x}{2}$$

$$\frac{dt}{dx} = \frac{1}{2} \sec^2 \frac{x}{2} = \frac{1}{2} (1+t^2)$$

$$dx = \frac{2}{1+t^2} dt$$

$$\text{Idea: } \int f(\sin x, \cos x) \, dx$$

$$= \int \underbrace{f\left(\frac{2t}{1+t^2}, \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}\right)}_{\text{Rational functions of } t} \frac{2}{1+t^2} dt$$

Rational functions of  $t$ .

Transforming an integral of trigonometric function to an integral of rational function.

$$\int \csc x \, dx$$

$$= \int \frac{1+t^2}{2t} \frac{2}{1+t^2} dt$$

$$= \int \frac{1}{t} dt$$

$$= \ln |t| + C$$

$$= \ln \left| \tan \frac{x}{2} \right| + C$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int \sec x \, dx \\
&= \int \frac{1+t^2}{1-t^2} \cdot \frac{2}{1+t^2} \, dt \\
&= \int \frac{2}{1-t^2} \, dt \\
&= \int \frac{1}{1+t} + \frac{1}{1-t} \, dt \\
&= \ln|1+t| - \ln|1-t| + C \\
&= \ln \left| \frac{1+t}{1-t} \right| + C \\
&= \ln \left| \frac{2t+1-t^2}{1-t^2} \right| + C \\
&= \ln|\tan x + \sec x| + C
\end{aligned}$$

Example 8.3.11

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int \frac{1}{1+\cos x} \, dx \\
&= \int \frac{1}{1+\frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}} \cdot \frac{2}{1+t^2} \, dt \\
&= \int dt \\
&= t + C \\
&= \tan \frac{x}{2} + C
\end{aligned}$$

Remark:  $t$ -substitution is particularly useful for  $\int \frac{1}{A\cos x + B\sin x + C} \, dx$ .

Exercise 8.3.2

By  $t$ -substitution, show that  $\int \sin x \, dx = -\frac{2}{1+\tan^2 \frac{x}{2}} + C$ .

However, we know  $\int \sin x \, dx = -\cos x + C$

What is the relation between  $-\frac{2}{1+\tan^2 \frac{x}{2}}$  and  $-\cos x$ ?

Ans:  $-\frac{2}{1+\tan^2 \frac{x}{2}} - (-\cos x) = -\frac{2}{1+t^2} + \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2} = -1$  which is a constant.

### Exercise 8.3.2

Show that

$$a) \int \sin px \, dx = -\frac{1}{p} \cos px + C$$

$$b) \int \cos px \, dx = \frac{1}{p} \sin px + C$$

$$\bullet \int \sin px \cos qx \, dx, \int \sin px \sin qx \, dx, \int \cos px \cos qx \, dx$$

$$\text{Recall: } \sin px \cos qx = \frac{1}{2} [\sin(p+q)x + \sin(p-q)x]$$

$$\cos px \cos qx = \frac{1}{2} [\cos(p+q)x + \cos(p-q)x]$$

$$\sin px \sin qx = -\frac{1}{2} [\cos(p+q)x - \cos(p-q)x]$$

We know how to integrate RHS!

### Example 8.3.12

$$\begin{aligned} & \int \sin 5x \cos 3x \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int \sin 8x + \sin 2x \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( -\frac{\cos 8x}{8} - \frac{\cos 2x}{2} \right) + C \\ &= -\frac{\cos 8x}{16} - \frac{\cos 2x}{4} + C \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{In particular, } \cos^2 px = \frac{1}{2} (1 + \cos 2px)$$

$$\sin^2 px = \frac{1}{2} (1 - \cos 2px)$$

### Example 8.3.13

$$\begin{aligned} & \int \cos x \cos^2 3x \, dx \\ &= \int \cos x \left[ \frac{1}{2} (1 + \cos 6x) \right] dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int \cos x \, dx + \frac{1}{2} \int \cos x \cos 6x \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int \cos x \, dx + \frac{1}{4} \int \cos 7x + \cos 5x \, dx \\ &= \frac{\sin x}{2} + \frac{\sin 7x}{28} + \frac{\sin 5x}{20} + C \end{aligned}$$

Exercise: Find  $\int \sin x \sin 3x \sin 6x \, dx$

$$\text{Ans: } \frac{\cos 10x}{40} + \frac{\cos 2x}{8} - \frac{\cos 8x}{32} - \frac{\cos 4x}{16} + C$$

•  $\int \sin^m x \cos^n x dx$

Case 1: m is odd

Apply:  $\sin x dx = -d \cos x$  and  $\sin^2 x = 1 - \cos^2 x$

Example 8.3.14

$$\begin{aligned} &\int \sin^3 x \cos^2 x dx \\ &= \int \sin^2 x \sin x \cos^2 x dx \\ &= -\int \sin^2 x \cos^2 x d \cos x \\ &= -\int (1 - \cos^2 x) \cos^2 x d \cos x \\ &= \int -\cos^2 x + \cos^4 x d \cos x \\ &= -\frac{\cos^3 x}{3} + \frac{\cos^5 x}{5} + C \end{aligned}$$

Case 2: n is odd

Similar to case 1

Apply:  $\cos x dx = d \sin x$  and  $\cos^2 x = 1 - \sin^2 x$

Example 8.3.15

$$\begin{aligned} &\int \sin^4 x \cos^3 x dx \\ &= \int \sin^4 x \cos^2 x \cos x dx \\ &= \int \sin^4 x (1 - \sin^2 x) d \sin x \\ &: \text{Ex} \\ &= \frac{\sin^5 x}{5} - \frac{\sin^7 x}{7} + C \end{aligned}$$

Case 3: m and n are even.

Apply:  $\sin^2 x = \frac{1 - \cos 2x}{2}$ ,  $\cos^2 x = \frac{1 + \cos 2x}{2}$ ,  $\sin x \cos x = \frac{1}{2} \sin 2x$

Example 8.3.16

$$\begin{aligned} &\int \sin^2 x \cos^4 x dx \\ &= \int (\sin x \cos x)^2 \cos^2 x dx \\ &= \int \left( \frac{1}{4} \sin^2 2x \right) \left( \frac{1 + \cos 2x}{2} \right) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{8} \int \sin^2 2x dx + \frac{1}{8} \int \sin^2 2x \cos 2x dx \\ & \quad \swarrow \text{case 3 again} \quad \nwarrow \text{reduce to case 1} \\ &= \frac{1}{16} \int 1 - \cos 4x dx + \frac{1}{8} \int \sin^2 2x \cdot \frac{1}{2} d \sin 2x \\ &= \frac{x}{16} - \frac{\sin 4x}{64} + \frac{\sin^3 2x}{48} + C \end{aligned}$$

•  $\int \tan^m x \sec^n x dx$

Case 1.  $m$  is odd

Apply :  $\tan x \sec x dx = d \sec x$  and  $\tan^2 x = 1 - \sec^2 x$

Example 8.3.17

$$\begin{aligned} & \int \tan^3 x \sec^4 x dx \\ &= \int \tan^2 x \tan x \sec^3 x \sec x dx \\ &= \int \tan^2 x \sec^3 x d \sec x \\ &= \int (\sec^2 x - 1) \sec^3 x d \sec x \\ &= \int \sec^5 x - \sec^3 x d \sec x \\ &= \frac{\sec^5 x}{5} - \frac{\sec^3 x}{3} + C \end{aligned}$$

Case 2.  $n$  is even

Similar to case 1

Apply :  $\sec^2 x dx = d \tan x$  and  $\sec^2 x = 1 + \tan^2 x$

Example 8.3.18

$$\begin{aligned} & \int \tan^4 x \sec^4 x dx \\ &= \int \tan^4 x \sec^2 x \sec^2 x dx \\ &= \int \tan^4 x (1 + \tan^2 x) d \tan x \\ & \quad : \text{Ex} \\ &= \frac{\tan^5 x}{5} + \frac{\tan^7 x}{7} + C \end{aligned}$$

Case 3.  $m$  is even and  $n$  is odd

Using integration by parts, later!

•  $\int \csc^m x \cot^n x dx$

Similarly, apply  $\csc^2 x = -d \cot x$

$$\csc x \cot x = -d \csc x$$

$$1 + \cot^2 x = \csc^2 x$$

Exercise : Find

a)  $\int \csc^6 x \cot^4 x dx$       Ans :  $-\frac{\cot^9 x}{9} - \frac{2\cot^7 x}{7} - \frac{\cot^5 x}{5} + C$

b)  $\int \csc^5 x \cot^3 x dx$        $-\frac{\csc^7 x}{7} + \frac{\csc^5 x}{5} + C$

## Integration of Irrational Functions:

• Integrand with  $\sqrt{a^2-x^2}$ ,  $\sqrt{a^2+x^2}$ ,  $\sqrt{x^2-a^2}$  ( $a > 0$ )

(1) For  $\sqrt{a^2-x^2}$ , we let  $x = a \sin \theta$   $-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$

(2) For  $\sqrt{a^2+x^2}$ , we let  $x = a \tan \theta$   $-\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$

(3) For  $\sqrt{x^2-a^2}$ , we let  $x = a \sec \theta$   $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi, \theta \neq \frac{\pi}{2}$

### Example 8.3.19

$$\int x^3 \sqrt{4-x^2} dx$$

$$\text{Let } x = 2 \sin \theta$$

$$= \int 8 \sin^3 \theta \sqrt{4 \cos^2 \theta} (2 \cos \theta) d\theta$$

$$dx = 2 \cos \theta d\theta$$

$$= \int 32 \cos^2 \theta \sin^3 \theta d\theta$$

$$= \int 32 \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \theta \sin \theta d\theta$$

$$x = 2 \sin \theta \Rightarrow \sin \theta = \frac{x}{2}$$

$$= \int 32 \cos^2 \theta (1 - \cos^2 \theta) d(-\cos \theta)$$

$$\cos \theta = \pm \sqrt{1 - \sin^2 \theta} = \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^2} = \pm \frac{\sqrt{4-x^2}}{2}$$

$$= \int 32 \cos^4 \theta - 32 \cos^2 \theta d \cos \theta$$

$$-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2} \Rightarrow \cos \theta > 0$$

$$= \frac{32}{5} \cos^5 \theta - \frac{32}{3} \cos^3 \theta + C$$

$$\therefore \cos \theta = \frac{\sqrt{4-x^2}}{2}$$

$$= \frac{32}{5} \left(\frac{\sqrt{4-x^2}}{2}\right)^5 - \frac{32}{3} \left(\frac{\sqrt{4-x^2}}{2}\right)^3 + C$$

$$= -\frac{1}{15} (3x^2 + 8)(4-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} + C$$

Note:  $\sqrt{a^2-x^2}$  is well-defined only when  $a^2-x^2 \geq 0$ , that means  $-a < x < a$

Also we have  $-1 \leq \sin \theta \leq 1$  when  $-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ ,

so  $-a \leq a \sin \theta \leq a$ , that is the reason why we let  $x = a \sin \theta$ .

Think: How about  $\sqrt{a^2+x^2}$  and  $\sqrt{x^2-a^2}$ ?

### Example 8.3.20

$$\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2-4}}{x^3} dx$$

$$\text{Let } x = 2 \sec \theta$$

$$= \int \frac{\sqrt{4 \tan^2 \theta}}{8 \sec^3 \theta} 2 \sec \theta \tan \theta d\theta$$

$$dx = 2 \sec \theta \tan \theta d\theta$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \int \sin^2 \theta d\theta$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} \int 1 - \cos 2\theta d\theta$$

$$= -\frac{1}{8} \sin 2\theta + \frac{\theta}{4} + C$$

: Ex

$$= -\frac{\sqrt{x^2-4}}{2x^2} + \frac{1}{4} \cos^{-1} \frac{2}{x} + C$$

### Exercise 8.3.3

Show that, for  $a > 0$ ,

$$a) \int \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} dx = \frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{1}{2} a^2 \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}\right) + C$$

$$b) \int \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} dx = \frac{1}{2} x \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} + \frac{1}{2} a^2 \ln|x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}| + C$$

### 8.4 Integration by Parts

Recall: Let  $u(x)$  and  $v(x)$  be differentiable functions.

$$\text{Product rule: } \frac{d}{dx}(uv) = u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx}$$
$$u \frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(uv) - v \frac{du}{dx}$$

Integrate both sides with respect to  $x$ :

$$\int u \frac{dv}{dx} dx = \int \frac{d}{dx}(uv) dx - \int v \frac{du}{dx} dx$$

$$\int u \frac{dv}{dx} dx = uv - \int v \frac{du}{dx} dx$$

$$\text{OR: } \int u dv = uv - \int v du$$

$$\text{Integration by Parts: } \int u \frac{dv}{dx} dx = uv - \int v \frac{du}{dx} dx$$

#### Example 8.4.1

$$\int x^2 \ln x dx = \int (\ln x) x^2 dx$$

$$= \int (\ln x) \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x^3}{3}\right) dx \quad (\text{Now, } u = \ln x, v = \frac{x^3}{3})$$

$$= \int \ln x d\frac{x^3}{3}$$

$$= \frac{x^3}{3} \ln x - \int \frac{x^3}{3} d(\ln x)$$

$$= \frac{x^3}{3} \ln x - \int \frac{x^3}{3} \frac{1}{x} dx$$

$$= \frac{x^3}{3} \ln x - \int \frac{x^2}{3} dx$$

$$= \frac{x^3}{3} \ln x - \frac{x^3}{9} + C$$

(Verify the answer by differentiation!)

Example 8.4.2

$$\begin{aligned} & \int x e^x dx \\ &= \int x de^x \\ &= x e^x - \int e^x dx \\ &= x e^x - e^x + C \\ &= e^x(x-1) + C \end{aligned}$$

Note:  $\frac{d}{dx} e^x = e^x$

$$e^x dx = de^x$$

Now,  $u = x$ ,  $v = e^x$

Remark: Why don't we try the following?

$$\begin{aligned} & \int x e^x dx \\ &= \int e^x x dx \\ &= \int e^x d\left(\frac{x^2}{2}\right) \\ & \quad \vdots \end{aligned}$$

What happens?

Example 8.4.3

$$\begin{aligned} & \int x^2 e^x dx \\ &= \int x^2 de^x \\ &= x^2 e^x - \int e^x dx^2 \\ &= x^2 e^x - \int 2x e^x dx \end{aligned}$$

Ex:  $\int 2x e^x dx$  Apply Integration by parts again!

Ans:  $e^x(x^2 - 2x + 2) + C$

Question: How to make a guess of  $u(x)$  and  $v(x)$ ?

Integration by Parts:  $\int u \frac{dv}{dx} dx = uv - \int v \frac{du}{dx} dx$

Example:  $\int x^2 \ln x dx = \int (\ln x) x^2 dx$   
 $= \int (\ln x) \frac{d}{dx} \left( \frac{x^3}{3} \right) dx$

Realize the integrand as a product of parts and make a guess of  $u(x)$  and  $v(x)$  such that one part can be realized as a function  $u(x)$ , another part is  $v'(x)$



Example 8.4.4

$$\begin{aligned} & \int x \sin 3x \, dx \\ &= \int x \, d\left(-\frac{1}{3} \cos 3x\right) \\ &= -\frac{1}{3} x \cos 3x - \int -\frac{1}{3} \cos 3x \, dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{3} x \cos 3x + \frac{1}{9} \sin 3x + C \end{aligned}$$

Integration of Logarithmic Functions:

$$\int \ln x \, dx = ? \quad \text{for } x > 0$$

Using Integration by part.

$$\begin{aligned} \int \ln x \, dx &= x \ln x - \int x \, d \ln x && u = \ln x \quad v = x \\ &= x \ln x - \int x \cdot \frac{1}{x} \, dx \\ &= x \ln x - \int dx \\ &= x \ln x - x + C \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 8.4.1

Find  $\int \log_a x \, dx$

Hints:  $\log_a x = \frac{\ln x}{\ln a}$

$$\begin{aligned} \int \log_a x \, dx &= \frac{1}{\ln a} \int \ln x \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\ln a} (x \ln x - x + C) \\ &= x \frac{\ln x}{\ln a} - \frac{x}{\ln a} + \frac{C}{\ln a} \\ &= x \log_a x - \frac{x}{\ln a} + C' \quad C' = \frac{C}{\ln a} \text{ just a constant!} \end{aligned}$$

Example 8.4.5 (Transformed into the original Integral)

$$\begin{aligned}\int e^x \cos x \, dx &= \int e^x \, d \sin x \\ &= e^x \sin x - \int \sin x \, de^x \\ &= e^x \sin x - \int e^x \sin x \, dx \\ &= e^x \sin x - \int e^x d(-\cos x) \\ &= e^x \sin x - (-e^x \cos x - \int -\cos x \, de^x) \\ &= e^x \sin x - (-e^x \cos x - \int -e^x \cos x \, dx) \\ &= e^x \sin x + e^x \cos x - \underbrace{\int e^x \cos x \, dx}_{\text{back to itself!}}\end{aligned}$$

Be careful of +/- !

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore 2 \int e^x \cos x \, dx &= e^x \sin x + e^x \cos x + C' \quad \leftarrow \text{Don't forget!} \\ \int e^x \cos x \, dx &= \frac{1}{2} e^x (\sin x + \cos x) + C \quad (C = \frac{1}{2} C')\end{aligned}$$

Example 8.4.6

$$\begin{aligned}\int \sin(\ln x) \, dx &= x \sin(\ln x) - \int x \, d \sin(\ln x) \\ &= x \sin(\ln x) - \int \cos(\ln x) \, dx \\ &= x \sin(\ln x) - (x \cos(\ln x) - \int x \, d \cos(\ln x)) \\ &= x \sin(\ln x) - x \cos(\ln x) - \int \sin(\ln x) \, dx\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \int \sin(\ln x) \, dx = \frac{1}{2} x [\sin(\ln x) + \cos(\ln x)] + C$$

Exercise 8.4.2

$$\begin{aligned}\int \sec^3 x \, dx &= \int \sec x (\sec^2 x) \, dx \\ &= \int \sec x \, d \tan x\end{aligned}$$

Ex :

$$= \sec x \tan x - \int \sec^3 x \, dx + \int \sec x \, dx$$

$$\therefore \int \sec^3 x \, dx = \frac{1}{2} [\sec x \tan x + \ln |\sec x + \tan x|] + C$$

Think : In general, how to find  $\int \tan^m x \sec^n x \, dx$  if  $m$  is even,  $n$  is odd ?

## 8.5 Reduction Formulae



Idea: Obtain a formula to reduce the complexity of the integrand.

Example 8.5.1

Let  $I_n = \int x^n e^x dx$ , where  $n$  is a nonnegative integer.

Prove that  $I_n = x^n e^x - n I_{n-1}$ , for  $n \geq 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned} I_n &= \int x^n e^x dx \\ &= \int x^n de^x \\ &= x^n e^x - \int e^x dx^n \\ &= x^n e^x - \int n e^x x^{n-1} dx \\ &= x^n e^x - n I_{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

Note:  $I_0 = \int e^x dx = e^x + C$

We can apply this formula repeatedly until we see  $I_0$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \int x^3 e^x dx &= I_3 = x^3 e^x - 3 I_2 \\ &= x^3 e^x - 3(x^2 e^x - 2 I_1) \\ &= x^3 e^x - 3(x^2 e^x - 2(x e^x - 1 \cdot I_0)) \\ &= x^3 e^x - 3x^2 e^x + 3 \cdot 2 x e^x - 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 \cdot I_0 \\ &= x^3 e^x - 3x^2 e^x + 3 \cdot 2 x e^x - 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 \cdot e^x + C \\ &= x^3 e^x - P_1^3 x^2 e^x + P_2^3 x e^x - P_3^3 e^x + C \\ &= \left[ \sum_{r=0}^3 (-1)^r P_r^3 x^{3-r} e^x \right] + C \end{aligned}$$

In general,  $\int x^n e^x dx = \left[ \sum_{r=0}^n (-1)^r P_r^n x^{n-r} e^x \right] + C$  for  $n \geq 1$ .

The formula  $I_n = x^n e^x - n I_{n-1}$  is called a reduction formula.

### Example 8.5.2

Let  $I_n = \int \tan^n x \, dx$ , where  $n$  is a nonnegative integer.

Show that  $I_n = \frac{1}{n-1} \tan^{n-1} x - I_{n-2}$  for  $n \geq 2$ .

Why/How do we get this?

$$\int \tan^{n-2} x \, d \tan x$$

$$\begin{aligned} I_n &= \int \tan^n x \, dx \\ &= \int \tan^{n-2} x \tan^2 x \, dx \\ &= \int \tan^{n-2} x (\sec^2 x - 1) \, dx \\ &= \int \tan^{n-2} x \sec^2 x \, dx - \int \tan^{n-2} x \, dx \\ &= \int \tan^{n-2} x \, d \tan x - I_{n-2} \\ &= \frac{1}{n-1} \tan^{n-1} x - I_{n-2} \end{aligned}$$

As we can see, the index  $n$  is decreased by 2 when the reduction formula is applied, so we have two cases:

Case 1: start from an even integer  $n = 2m$

$$\begin{aligned} I_{2m} &= \frac{1}{2m-1} \tan^{2m-1} x - I_{2m-2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2m-1} \tan^{2m-1} x - \frac{1}{2m-3} \tan^{2m-3} x + I_{2m-4} \\ &\vdots \\ &= \frac{1}{2m-1} \tan^{2m-1} x - \frac{1}{2m-3} \tan^{2m-3} x + \dots + (-1)^{m-2} \frac{1}{3} \tan^3 x + (-1)^{m-1} \tan x + (-1)^m I_0 \quad (\text{end at } I_0) \\ &= \frac{1}{2m-1} \tan^{2m-1} x - \frac{1}{2m-3} \tan^{2m-3} x + \dots + (-1)^{m-2} \frac{1}{3} \tan^3 x + (-1)^{m-1} \tan x + (-1)^m x + C \quad (I_0 = \int dx = x + C) \end{aligned}$$

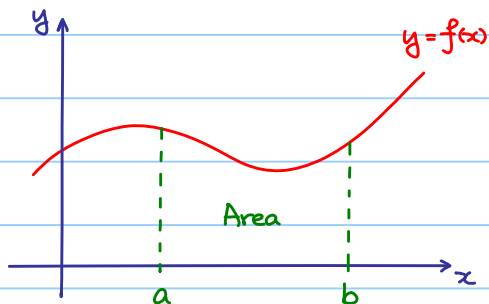
Case 2: start from an odd integer  $n = 2m+1$

$$\begin{aligned} I_{2m+1} &= \frac{1}{2m} \tan^{2m} x - I_{2m-1} \\ &= \frac{1}{2m} \tan^{2m} x - \frac{1}{2m-2} \tan^{2m-2} x + I_{2m-3} \\ &\vdots \\ &= \frac{1}{2m} \tan^{2m} x - \frac{1}{2m-2} \tan^{2m-2} x + \dots + (-1)^{m-2} \frac{1}{4} \tan^4 x + (-1)^{m-1} \frac{1}{2} \tan^2 x + (-1)^m I_1 \quad (\text{end at } I_1) \\ &= \frac{1}{2m} \tan^{2m} x - \frac{1}{2m-2} \tan^{2m-2} x + \dots + (-1)^{m-2} \frac{1}{4} \tan^4 x + (-1)^{m-1} \frac{1}{2} \tan^2 x + (-1)^m \ln |\sec x| + C \\ &\quad (I_1 = \int \tan x \, dx = \ln |\sec x| + C) \end{aligned}$$

## § 9 Definite Integration

### 9.1 Riemann Sum

Goal: Find the area of the region under the curve  $y=f(x)$  over an interval  $[a,b]$ .



Wait! We know what the area of a rectangle is.

However, what is the area of a region with a curved boundary? (How to define?)



Idea:

Approximate by rectangles!

A partition of the interval  $[a,b]$  is a finite set  $\{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  such that

$$a = x_0 < x_1 < x_2 < \dots < x_n = b.$$

We denote  $\Delta x_k = x_k - x_{k-1}$  for  $k=1, 2, \dots, n$ .

Then, we choose points,  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n$ , called partition points so that

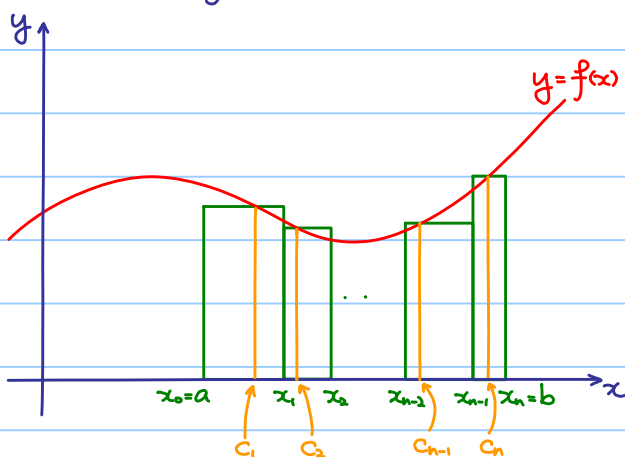
$$x_{k-1} \leq c_k \leq x_k \text{ for } k=1, 2, \dots, n.$$

#### Definition 9.1.1

Let  $f: [a,b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . The Riemann sum is defined by  $\sum_{k=1}^n f(c_k) \Delta x_k$ .

In particular, if  $x_{k-1} = c_k$ , the sum is called the left Riemann sum;

if  $c_k = x_k$ , the sum is called the right Riemann sum.



For the  $k$ -th rectangle:

$$\underbrace{f(c_k)}_{\text{height}} \underbrace{\Delta x_k}_{\text{width}} = \text{area of the } k\text{-th rectangle}$$

Example 9.1.1

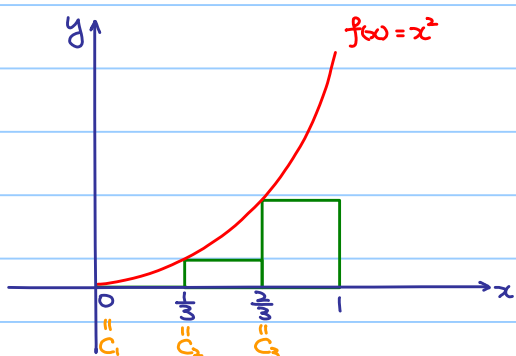
Let  $f(x) = x^2$ .

Approximate area under  $f(x)$  over  $[0, 1]$

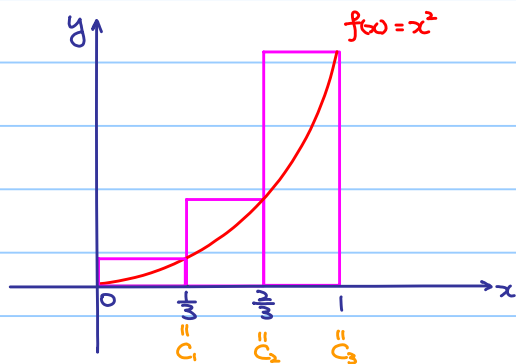
with 3 even partitions:  $0 < \frac{1}{3} < \frac{2}{3} < 1$  ( $x_0 = 0, x_1 = \frac{1}{3}, x_2 = \frac{2}{3}, x_3 = 1$ )

Riemann Sum:

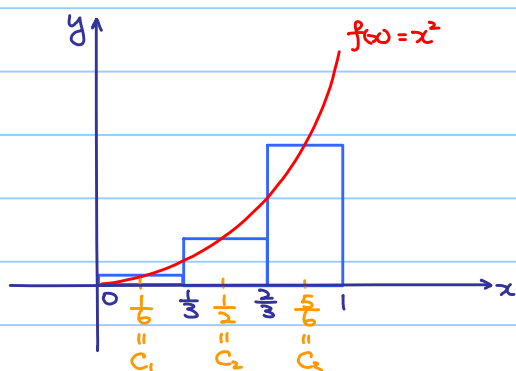
Left sum:  $c_1 = 0, c_2 = \frac{1}{3}, c_3 = \frac{2}{3}$  area  $\approx 0^2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} + (\frac{1}{3})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} + (\frac{2}{3})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} = \frac{5}{27}$



Right sum:  $c_1 = \frac{1}{3}, c_2 = \frac{2}{3}, c_3 = 1$  area  $\approx (\frac{1}{3})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} + (\frac{2}{3})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} + 1^2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} = \frac{14}{27}$



Mid-pt sum:  $c_1 = \frac{1}{6}, c_2 = \frac{1}{2}, c_3 = \frac{5}{6}$  area  $\approx (\frac{1}{6})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} + (\frac{1}{2})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} + (\frac{5}{6})^2 \cdot \frac{1}{3} = \frac{35}{108}$



Idea: Increasing  $n$  (number of rectangles)  $\Rightarrow$  Better approximation

### Theorem 9.1.1

If  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is continuous (or piecewise continuous),

and  $\Delta x_k = \Delta x = \frac{b-a}{n}$  for  $k=1, 2, \dots, n$  (even partition),  $x_k = a + k\Delta x$  for  $k=0, 1, 2, \dots, n$ ,

then no matter how  $c_k$  are chosen,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(c_k) \Delta x$  is always the same.

The area under  $f(x)$  over  $[a, b]$  is defined to be this number,

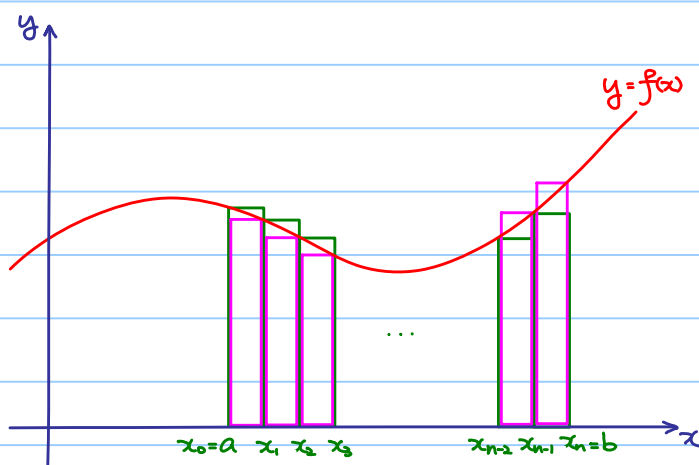
which is denoted by  $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ .

(Remark: Nothing related to indefinite integration so far!)

In particular,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_a^b f(x) dx &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(x_{k-1}) \Delta x \quad (\text{take } c_k = x_{k-1}) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} [f(x_0) + f(x_1) + \dots + f(x_{n-1})] \Delta x \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(x_k) \Delta x \end{aligned}$$

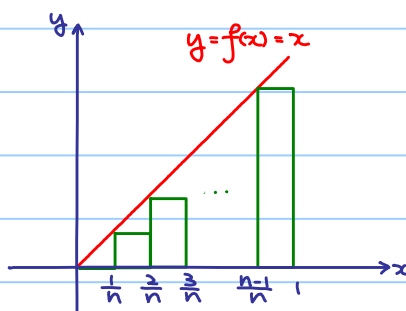
$$\begin{aligned} \int_a^b f(x) dx &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(x_k) \Delta x \quad (\text{take } c_k = x_k) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} [f(x_1) + f(x_2) + \dots + f(x_n)] \Delta x \end{aligned}$$



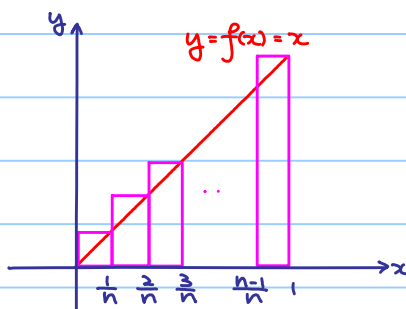
### Example 9.1.2

Let  $f(x) = x$ , for  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ . (Take  $a=0, b=1, \Delta x = \frac{b-a}{n} = \frac{1}{n}, x_k = a + k\Delta x = \frac{k}{n}$ )

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(x_{k-1}) \Delta x &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f\left(\frac{k-1}{n}\right) \cdot \frac{1}{n} \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{k-1}{n} \cdot \frac{1}{n} \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n^2} \left( \sum_{k=1}^n (k-1) \right) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n^2} \left[ \frac{n(n-1)}{2} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(x_k) \Delta x &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f\left(\frac{k}{n}\right) \cdot \frac{1}{n} \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{k}{n} \cdot \frac{1}{n} \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n^2} \left( \sum_{k=1}^n k \right) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n^2} \left[ \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$



In fact, computation of the area is not relying on the above theorem,

but the **fundamental theorem of calculus** (Later!)

## 9.2 Rules for Definite Integration

### Theorem 9.2.1

Let  $f, g: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be continuous (or piecewise continuous) functions. Suppose  $a \leq b$ .

- 1) If  $m$  is a constant,  $\int_a^b m f(x) dx = m \int_a^b f(x) dx$
- 2)  $\int_a^b f(x) \pm g(x) dx = \int_a^b f(x) dx \pm \int_a^b g(x) dx$
- 3)  $\int_a^a f(x) dx = 0$
- 4)  $\int_b^a f(x) dx = -\int_a^b f(x) dx$  (reverse direction)
- 5)  $\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^c f(x) dx + \int_c^b f(x) dx$  for any  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  (subdivision)

Idea of proof:

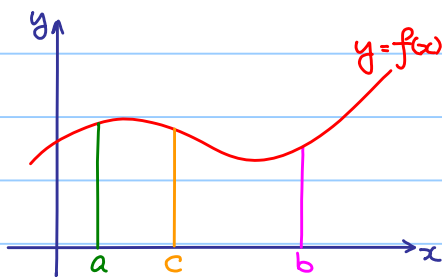
$$1) \int_a^b m f(x) dx = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n m f(c_k) \Delta x = m \left( \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(c_k) \Delta x \right) = m \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

$$2) \int_a^b f(x) \pm g(x) dx = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n [f(c_k) \pm g(c_k)] \Delta x = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \sum_{k=1}^n f(c_k) \Delta x \pm \sum_{k=1}^n g(c_k) \Delta x \right) = \int_a^b f(x) dx \pm \int_a^b g(x) dx$$

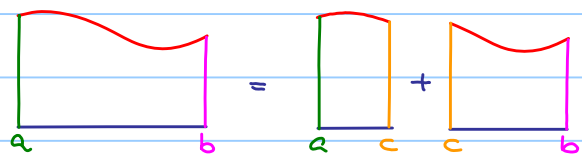
$$3) \int_a^a f(x) dx = \text{Area of a line segment} = 0$$

$$4) \int_b^a f(x) dx = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(c_k) \Delta x = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(c_k) \frac{a-b}{n} = - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(c_k) \frac{b-a}{n} = - \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

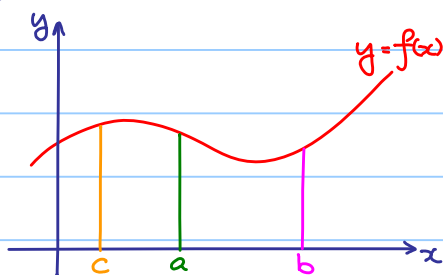
5) If  $a \leq c \leq b$ ,



$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^c f(x) dx + \int_c^b f(x) dx$$



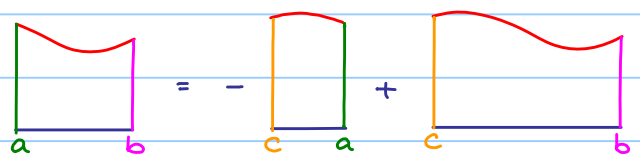
If  $c < a \leq b$ ,



$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^c f(x) dx + \int_c^b f(x) dx$$

" "  

$$- \int_c^a f(x) dx$$



Exercise: Why is (5) true if  $a \leq b < c$ ?



### Theorem 9.2.2

If  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a continuous function such that  $f(x) \geq 0$  for all  $x \in [a, b]$ , then  $\int_a^b f(x) dx \geq 0$ .



Idea of proof:

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(c_k) \Delta x = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \underbrace{f(c_k)}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{\frac{b-a}{n}}_{\geq 0} \geq 0$$

### Corollary 9.2.1

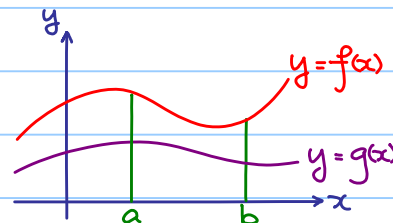
If  $f, g: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  are continuous functions such that  $f(x) \geq g(x)$  for all  $x \in [a, b]$ , then  $\int_a^b f(x) dx \geq \int_a^b g(x) dx$ .

proof:

$$f(x) - g(x) \geq 0 \text{ for all } x \in [a, b]$$

$$\Rightarrow \int_a^b f(x) - g(x) dx \geq 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \int_a^b f(x) dx \geq \int_a^b g(x) dx$$



### Corollary 9.2.2

If  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a continuous function, then

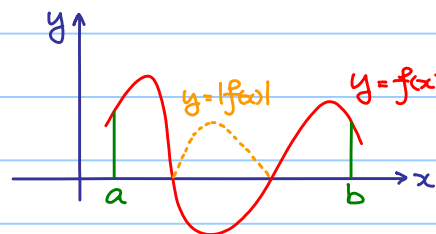
$$\left| \int_a^b f(x) dx \right| \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| dx$$

$$\text{(i.e. } -\int_a^b |f(x)| dx \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| dx \text{)}$$

proof:

$$\text{Note: } -|f(x)| \leq f(x) \leq |f(x)| \text{ for all } x \in [a, b]$$

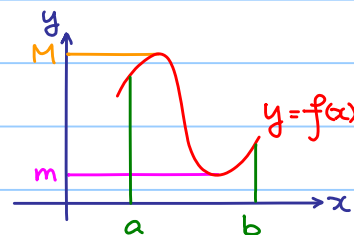
$$-\int_a^b |f(x)| dx \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| dx$$



### Corollary 9.2.3

If  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a continuous function such that  $m \leq f(x) \leq M$  for all  $x \in [a, b]$ , where  $m, M \in \mathbb{R}$ , then

$$m(b-a) \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx \leq M(b-a)$$

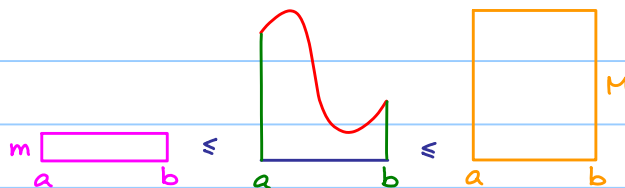


proof:

$$m \leq f(x) \leq M \text{ for all } x \in [a, b]$$

$$\Rightarrow \int_a^b m dx \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx \leq \int_a^b M dx$$

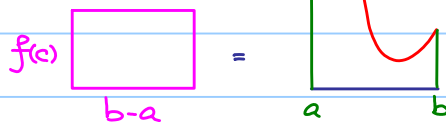
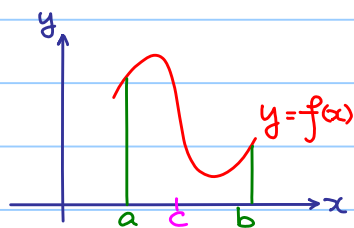
$$\Rightarrow m(b-a) \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx \leq M(b-a)$$



### Theorem 9.2.3 (Mean Value Theorem for integrals)

Let  $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function

Then, there exists  $c \in [a, b]$  such that  $\int_a^b f(x) dx = f(c)(b-a)$



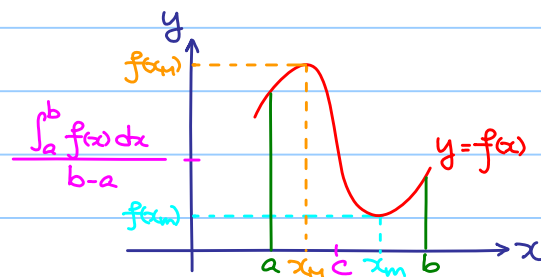
proof:

Since  $f$  is continuous on  $[a, b]$ , by the Maximum-Minimum Theorem (theorem 4.5.1), there exist  $x_m, x_M \in [a, b]$  such that  $f(x_m) \leq f(x) \leq f(x_M)$  for all  $x \in [a, b]$

By corollary 9.2.3,

$$f(x_m)(b-a) \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx \leq f(x_M)(b-a)$$

$$f(x_m) \leq \frac{\int_a^b f(x) dx}{b-a} \leq f(x_M)$$



By the intermediate value theorem (theorem 4.4.1)

there exists  $c$  that lies between  $x_m$  and  $x_M$  such that

$$f(c) = \frac{\int_a^b f(x) dx}{b-a}$$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = f(c)(b-a)$$

## 9.3 Fundamental Theorem of Calculus

Preparation:

Let  $f(t)$ ,  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ , be a continuous function.

1)  $\int_{x_0}^x f(t) dt$  is well defined for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$

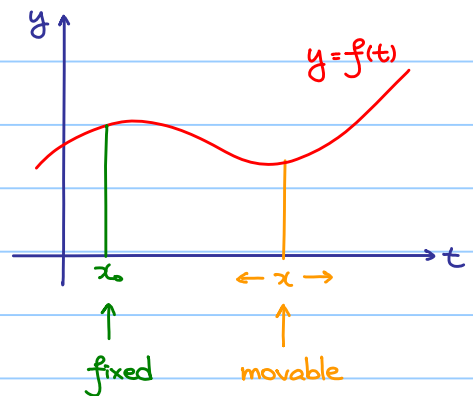
2) What is a function?

Roughly speaking, input  $x$ , output  $y$ .

Now, we define

$$F(x) = \text{Area under the curve } y=f(t) \text{ over } [x_0, x] \\ = \int_{x_0}^x f(t) dt$$

What is the relation between  $F(x)$  and  $f(x)$ ?



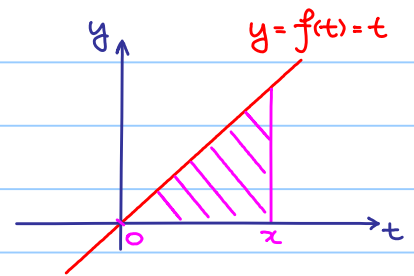
Example 9.3.1

Let  $f(t)=t$ ,  $x_0=0$ .

$$F(x) = \int_0^x f(t) dt \\ = \text{Area of the shaded triangle} = \frac{1}{2}x^2$$

Note: We have  $F'(x)=f(x)$ .

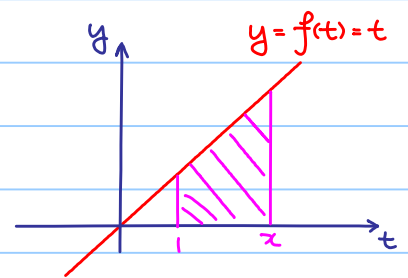
Surprisingly,  $F(x)$  is an antiderivative of  $f(x)$  !!!



How about fix another point  $x_0=1$ ?

$$G(x) = \int_1^x f(t) dt \\ = \text{Area of the shaded Trapezium} = \frac{(x+1)(x-1)}{2} = \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{1}{2}$$

Note: We have  $G'(x)=f(x)$ .



$$F(x) - G(x) = \int_0^x f(t) dt - \int_1^x f(t) dt = \int_0^1 f(t) dt \text{ which is a constant} \\ (= \frac{1}{2} \text{ which is the area of a triangle})$$

i.e.  $F(x) = G(x) + \text{constant}$

Therefore, if we have  $F'(x)=f(x)$ , it is natural to have  $G'(x)=f(x)$ .

It suggests that if  $F(x) = \int_{x_0}^x f(t) dt$ , then  $F'(x)=f(x)$  i.e.  $F(x)$  is an antiderivative of  $f(x)$ .

Also, different choices of  $x_0$  will give different antiderivatives of  $f(x)$ , but they just differ by a constant

Theorem 9.3.1 (Fundamental Theorem of Calculus)

Let  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function and let  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}$

Suppose  $F(x)$  is a function defined by

$$F(x) = \int_{x_0}^x f(t) dt,$$

then  $F(x)$  is a differentiable function and  $F'(x) = f(x)$ .

(i.e.  $F(x)$  is an antiderivative of  $f(x)$ .)

If we know how to compute an antiderivative  $\tilde{F}(x)$  of  $f(x)$ , then  $F(x) = \tilde{F}(x) + C$

Direct consequence:

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_{x_0}^b f(x) dx - \int_{x_0}^a f(x) dx$$

$$= \int_{x_0}^b f(t) dt - \int_{x_0}^a f(t) dt$$

$$= F(b) - F(a)$$

$$= (\tilde{F}(b) + C) - (\tilde{F}(a) + C)$$

$$= \tilde{F}(b) - \tilde{F}(a) \quad \text{for any antiderivative } \tilde{F}(x) \text{ of } f(x).$$

That means if we know how to compute an antiderivative  $\tilde{F}(x)$  of  $f(x)$ , then we can compute the area under the graph of  $f(x)$  over  $[a, b]$ .

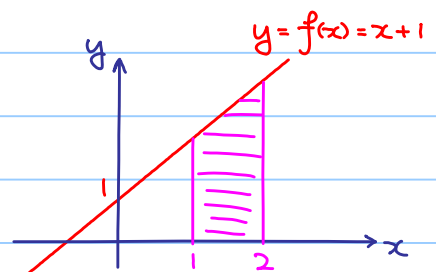
Example 9.3.2

Let  $f(x) = x+1$

Antiderivative of  $f(x) = \int x+1 dx = \frac{x^2}{2} + x + C$

Choose  $C=0$ , let  $F(x) = \frac{x^2}{2} + x$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area of the shaded region} &= \int_1^2 f(x) dx = F(2) - F(1) \\ &= 4 - \frac{3}{2} \\ &= \frac{5}{2} \end{aligned}$$



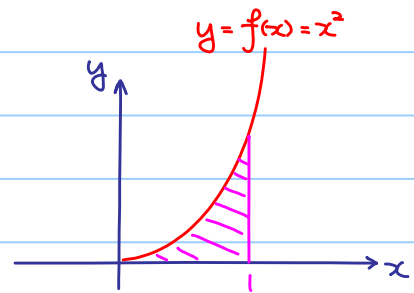
What we write:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_1^2 f(x) dx &= \left[ \frac{x^2}{2} + x \right]_1^2 \\ &= \underbrace{\left( \frac{2^2}{2} + 2 \right)}_{F(2)} - \underbrace{\left( \frac{1^2}{2} + 1 \right)}_{F(1)} = 4 - \frac{3}{2} = \frac{5}{2} \end{aligned}$$

Example 9.3.3

Let  $f(x) = x^2$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area of the shaded region} &= \int_0^1 f(x) dx \\ &= \left[ \frac{x^3}{3} \right]_0^1 \\ &= \left( \frac{1^3}{3} \right) - \left( \frac{0^3}{3} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \end{aligned}$$

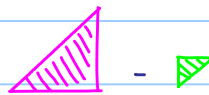


Example 9.3.4 (NOT area, but signed area)

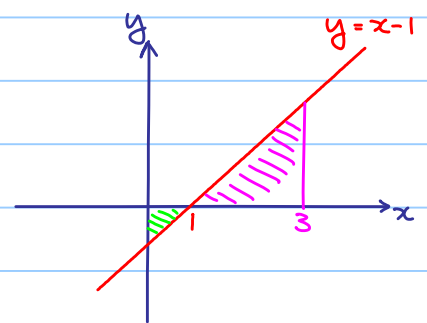
$$\int_0^1 x-1 dx = \left[ \frac{x^2}{2} - x \right]_0^1 = -\frac{1}{2}$$

$$\int_1^3 x-1 dx = \left[ \frac{x^2}{2} - x \right]_1^3 = 2$$

$$\int_0^3 x-1 dx = \left[ \frac{x^2}{2} - x \right]_0^3 = \frac{3}{2}$$



(Cancellation)



Example 9.3.5

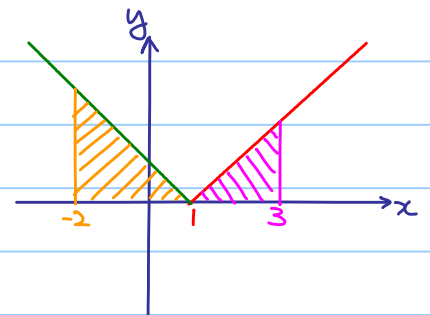
Find  $\int_{-2}^3 |x-1| dx$

Recall: We can rewrite  $|x-1| = \begin{cases} x-1 & \text{if } x \geq 1 \\ -(x-1) & \text{if } x < 1 \end{cases}$

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-2}^3 |x-1| dx &= \int_{-2}^1 |x-1| dx + \int_1^3 |x-1| dx \\ &= \int_{-2}^1 -(x-1) dx + \int_1^3 x-1 dx \end{aligned}$$

Exercise :

$$= \frac{9}{2} + 2 = \frac{13}{2}$$



### Example 9.3.6

Find  $\frac{dF}{dx}$  if

a)  $F(x) = \int_0^x e^{\cos t} dt$  , b)  $F(x) = \int_0^{x^2} e^{\cos t} dt$  , c)  $F(x) = \int_x^{x^2} e^{\cos t} dt$

a)  $\frac{dF}{dx} = e^{\cos x}$  (Directly from the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus,  $f(x) = e^{\cos x}$ )

b)  $\frac{dF}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx} \int_0^{x^2} e^{\cos t} dt \cdot \frac{dx^2}{dx}$  (Chain rule)  
 $= e^{\cos x^2} \cdot 2x$   
 $= 2xe^{\cos x^2}$

c)  $\frac{dF}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx} \int_0^{x^2} e^{\cos t} dt - \frac{d}{dx} \int_0^x e^{\cos t} dt$   
 $= 2xe^{\cos x^2} - e^{\cos x}$

### Example 9.3.7

Find  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \underbrace{\frac{1^2}{n^3} + \frac{2^2}{n^3} + \frac{3^2}{n^3} + \dots + \frac{n^2}{n^3}}_{n \text{ terms}} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{k^2}{n^3}$

Note: As  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , it is an infinite sum, i.e. summing infinitely many terms.

Algebraic rule does NOT work !!

We cannot say:  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1^2}{n^3} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2^2}{n^3} = \dots = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n^2}{n^3} = 0$   
 $\therefore \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1^2}{n^3} + \frac{2^2}{n^3} + \frac{3^2}{n^3} + \dots + \frac{n^2}{n^3} = 0$



Idea:

Regard the infinite sum as the left or right Riemann sum of some function, so the infinite sum is just the area under that function over an interval.

Recall: area under  $f(x)$  over  $[a, b] = \int_a^b f(x) dx$   
 $= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(x_k) \Delta x$  (Left)  
 $= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(x_k) \Delta x$  (Right)

where  $\Delta x = \frac{b-a}{n}$ ,  $x_k = a + k\Delta x$

In this case, take  $a=0$ ,  $b=1$ ,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{k^2}{n^3} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{k^2}{n^2} \cdot \frac{1}{n}$$

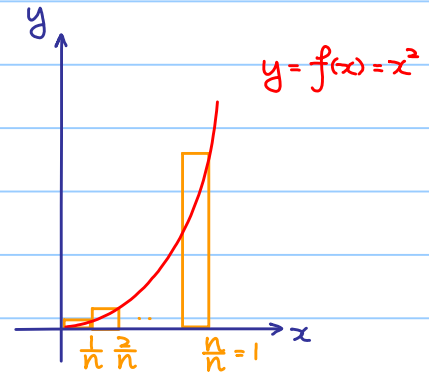
$$= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n \underbrace{f\left(\frac{k}{n}\right)}_{\text{orange}} \cdot \frac{1}{n}$$

$$= \int_0^1 f(x) dx$$

$$= \int_0^1 x^2 dx$$

$$= \left[ \frac{1}{3} x^3 \right]_0^1$$

$$= \frac{1}{3}$$



Right Riemann sum

Example 9.3.8

Find  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} (e^{1/n} + e^{2/n} + e^{3/n} + \dots + e^{n/n}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n e^{i/n}$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n e^{i/n} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{i=1}^n e^{i/n} \cdot \frac{1}{n}$$

$$= \int_0^1 e^x dx$$

$$= [e^x]_0^1$$

$$= e^1 - e^0$$

$$= e - 1$$

Example 9.3.10

Find  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n}{n^2} + \frac{n}{n^2+1^2} + \frac{n}{n^2+2^2} + \dots + \frac{n}{n^2+(n-1)^2} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{n}{n^2+k^2}$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{n}{n^2+k^2} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{1}{1+(\frac{k}{n})^2} \cdot \frac{1}{n}$$

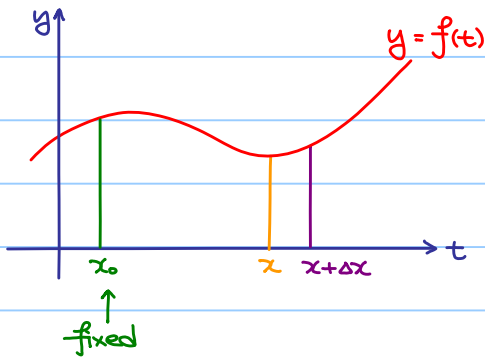
$$= \int_0^1 \frac{1}{1+x^2} dx$$

$$= [\tan^{-1} x]_0^1$$

$$= \frac{\pi}{4}$$

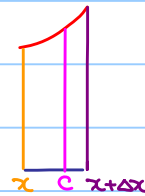
Proof of the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus :

Claim: If  $F(x) = \int_{x_0}^x f(t) dt$ ,  $\lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{F(x+\Delta x) - F(x)}{\Delta x} = f(x)$ , i.e.  $F'(x) = f(x)$



$$F(x+\Delta x) - F(x) = \int_x^{x+\Delta x} f(t) dt$$

= area of



=  $f(c) \Delta x$  for some  $c$  between  $x$  and  $x + \Delta x$   
(Mean Value theorem for integrals)

$$\begin{aligned} & \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{F(x+\Delta x) - F(x)}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(c) \Delta x}{\Delta x} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} f(c) \\ &= \lim_{c \rightarrow x} f(c) \quad (\text{As } \Delta x \text{ tends to } 0, c \text{ tends to } x) \\ &= f(x) \quad (\text{By continuity of } f) \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore F(x)$  is differentiable and  $F'(x) = f(x)$ .

## 9.4 Definite Integral Using Substitution

Theorem 9.4.1

$$\int_a^b f(u(x)) u'(x) dx = \int_{u(a)}^{u(b)} f(u) du$$

Example 9.4.1

Evaluate  $\int_0^1 8x(x^2+1) dx$

$$\int_0^1 8x(x^2+1) dx$$

$$= \int_1^2 8u \cdot \frac{1}{2} du$$

$$= \int_1^2 4u du$$

$$= [2u^2]_1^2$$

$$= 6$$

$$\text{let } u = x^2 + 1$$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 2x$$

$$\frac{1}{2} du = x dx$$

$$\text{when } x = 0, u = 1$$

$$x = 1, u = 2$$

} Similar to indefinite integration

} New!

} Don't forget!



Remark:

Some may write:

Still 0 and 1

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 8x(x^2+1) dx &= \int_0^1 4(x^2+1) d(x^2+1) && \text{(as } d(x^2+1) = 2x dx \text{)} \\ &= [2(x^2+1)]_0^1 \\ &= 6\end{aligned}$$

(Just the same result!)

Example 9.4.2

Evaluate  $\int_e^{e^2} \frac{1}{x \ln x} dx$

$$\begin{aligned}\int_e^{e^2} \frac{1}{x \ln x} dx & \quad \text{Let } u = \ln x \\ = \int_1^2 \frac{1}{u} du & \quad du = \frac{1}{x} dx \\ = [\ln u]_1^2 & \quad \text{when } x=e, u=1 \\ = \ln 2 - \ln 1 & \quad x=e^2, u=2 \\ = \ln 2\end{aligned}$$

Recall:

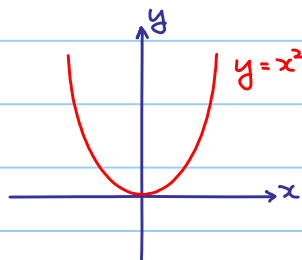
Definition 9.4.1

A function  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is said to be

- even if  $f(-x) = f(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$

e.g.  $x^2$ ,  $\cos x$ ,  $|x|$

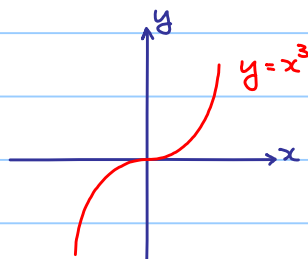
property: the graph is symmetric  
along y-axis.



- odd if  $f(-x) = -f(x)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$

e.g.  $x^3$ ,  $\sin x$

property: the graph is symmetric  
about the origin

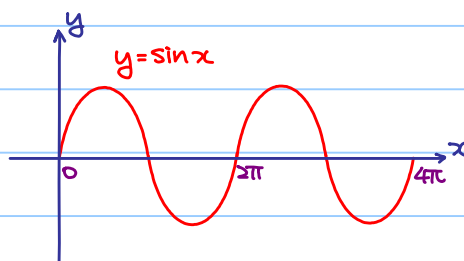


• periodic if there exists  $T > 0$  such that  $f(x) = f(x+T)$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$

If  $T > 0$  is the least positive real number with the above property,  $T$  is called the period.

e.g.  $\sin x, \cos x, \tan x$

property: the graph is repeating  
again and again



period of  $\sin x, \cos x = 2\pi$

period of  $\tan x = \pi$

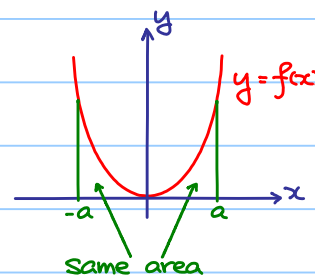
Example 9.4.3

Suppose  $f$  is an even function and  $a > 0$ , prove that  $\int_{-a}^a f(x) dx = 2 \int_0^a f(x) dx$ .

$$\int_{-a}^a f(x) dx = \int_{-a}^0 f(x) dx + \int_0^a f(x) dx$$

|| ?

$$\int_0^a f(x) dx$$



$$\int_{-a}^0 f(x) dx$$

Let  $y = -x$

$$dy = -dx$$

$$= \int_a^0 f(y) dy$$

When  $x = 0, y = 0$

$f(-y) = f(y)$  ↓

$$= \int_0^a f(y) dy$$

$x = -a, y = a$

$$= \int_0^a f(x) dx \quad (\text{dummy variable})$$

For example,  $|x|$  is an even function.

$$\int_{-4}^4 |x| dx = 2 \int_0^4 |x| dx = 2 \int_0^4 x dx = 2 \left[ \frac{x^2}{2} \right]_0^4 = 16$$

### Example 9.4.4

Suppose  $f$  is an odd function and  $a > 0$ , prove that  $\int_{-a}^a f(x) dx = 0$ .

$$\int_{-a}^a f(x) dx = \int_{-a}^0 f(x) dx + \int_0^a f(x) dx$$

|| ?

$$-\int_0^a f(x) dx$$

$$\int_{-a}^0 f(x) dx$$

Let  $y = -x$

$$= \int_{-a}^0 f(-y) dy$$

$dy = -dx$

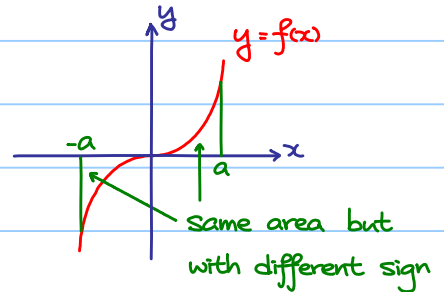
$f(-y) = -f(y)$

When  $x=0, y=0$

$$= \int_0^a -f(y) dy$$

$x=-a, y=a$

$$= -\int_0^a f(x) dx \quad (\text{dummy variable})$$



For example,  $\sin^{1001} x$  is an odd function, so  $\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \sin^{1001} x dx = 0$ .

### Example 9.4.5

Suppose  $f$  is a periodic function with period  $T > 0$  and  $a \in \mathbb{R}$ , prove that  $\int_a^{a+T} f(x) dx = \int_0^T f(x) dx$

$$\int_a^{a+T} f(x) dx = \int_a^T f(x) dx + \int_T^{a+T} f(x) dx$$

|| ?

$$\int_0^T f(x) dx$$

$$\int_T^{a+T} f(x) dx$$

Let  $y = x - T$

$$= \int_0^a f(y+T) dy$$

$dy = dx$

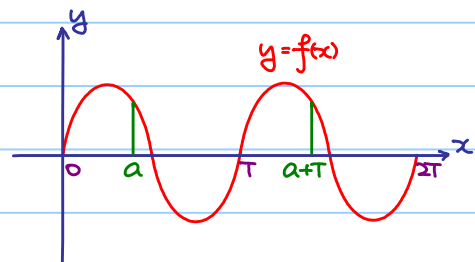
$f(y+T) = f(y)$

When  $x=T, y=0$

$$= \int_0^a f(y) dy$$

$x=a+T, y=a$

$$= \int_0^a f(x) dx \quad (\text{dummy variable})$$



Example 9.4.6

Prove that  $\int_0^a f(x) dx = \int_0^a f(a-x) dx$

$$\int_0^a f(a-x) dx$$

$$= \int_a^0 -f(y) dy$$

$$= \int_0^a f(y) dy$$

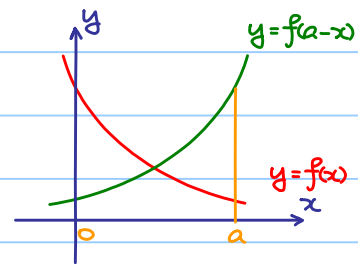
$$= \int_0^a f(x) dx \quad (\text{dummy variable})$$

$$\text{Let } y = a - x$$

$$dy = -dx$$

$$\text{When } x = 0, y = a$$

$$x = a, y = 0$$



## 9.5 Definite Integration Using Integration by Parts

Theorem 9.5.1

$$\int_a^b u \frac{dv}{dx} dx = [uv]_a^b - \int_a^b v \frac{du}{dx} dx$$

Example 9.5.1

Evaluate  $\int_1^e x \ln x dx$

$$\int_1^e x \ln x dx = \int_1^e \ln x d\left(\frac{x^2}{2}\right)$$

$$= \left[\frac{x^2}{2} \ln x\right]_1^e - \int_1^e \frac{x^2}{2} d \ln x$$

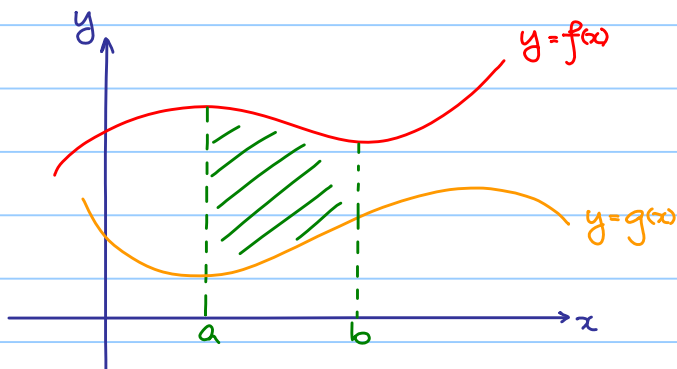
$$= \left(\frac{e^2}{2} \ln e - \frac{1}{2} \ln 1\right) - \int_1^e \frac{x}{2} dx$$

$$= \frac{e^2}{2} - \left[\frac{x^2}{4}\right]_1^e$$

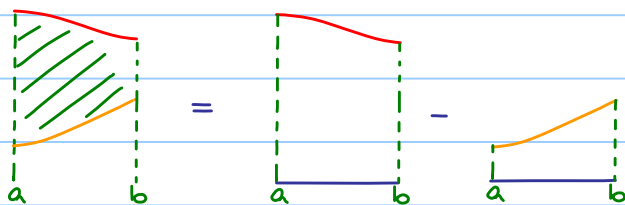
$$= \frac{e^2}{2} - \left(\frac{e^2}{4} - \frac{1}{4}\right)$$

$$= \frac{e^2}{4} + \frac{1}{4}$$

## 9.6 Area Between Curves



$$\text{Area of shaded region} = \int_a^b f(x) dx - \int_a^b g(x) dx$$



### Example 9.6.1

Find the area bounded by  $y=x^2$  and  $y=x^3$ .

Step 1: Solve 
$$\begin{cases} y=x^2 \\ y=x^3 \end{cases}$$

$$x^3 = x^2$$

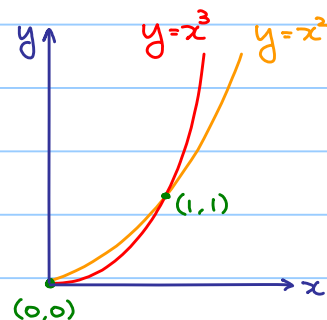
$$x^2(x-1) = 0$$

$$x=0 \text{ or } 1$$

(Remark: No need to solve  $y$ )

Step 2: Note when  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ ,  $x^3 \leq x^2$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= \int_0^1 x^2 - x^3 dx \\ &= \left[ \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} \right]_0^1 \\ &= \frac{1}{12} \end{aligned}$$



### Example 9.6.2

Find the area bounded by

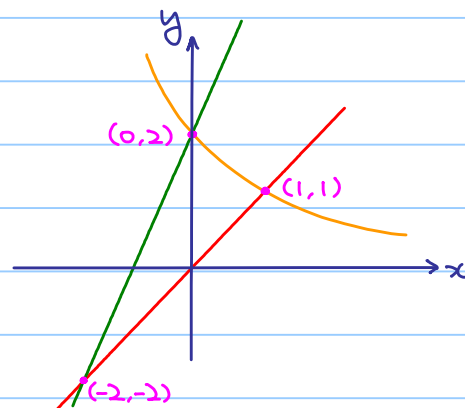
$$y = f(x) = x, \quad y = g(x) = \frac{2}{x+1} \quad \text{and} \quad y = h(x) = 2x+2$$

$$\text{Area} = \int_{-2}^0 h(x) - f(x) \, dx + \int_0^1 g(x) - f(x) \, dx$$

Exercise :

$$= 2 + \left(-\frac{1}{2} + \ln 4\right)$$

$$= \frac{3}{2} + \ln 4$$



### 9.7 Improper Integrals



Question: Find the area of the unbounded region?

Idea:



$$\int_a^L f(x) \, dx$$

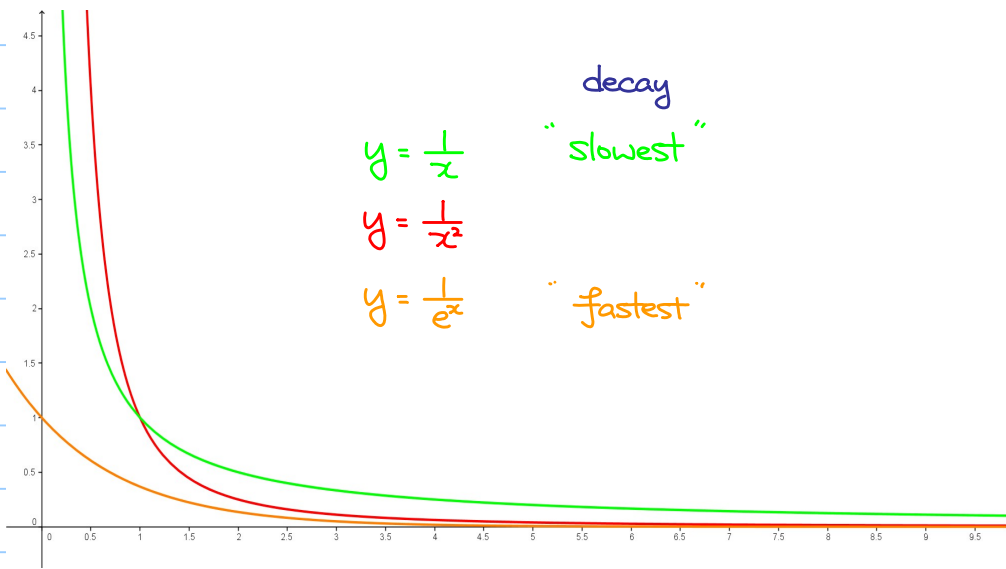
$\rightsquigarrow$

Area of the unbounded region

$$= \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \int_a^L f(x) \, dx \quad (\text{if it exists})$$

We denote it by  $\int_a^{+\infty} f(x) \, dx$

### Example 9.7.1



$$\textcircled{1} \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \int_1^L \frac{1}{x} dx = \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} [\ln x]_1^L = \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \ln L = +\infty \quad (\text{i.e. limit does NOT exist})$$

$$\textcircled{2} \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \int_1^L \frac{1}{x^2} dx = \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \left[-\frac{1}{x}\right]_1^L = \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \left(1 - \frac{1}{L}\right) = 1$$

$$\textcircled{3} \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \int_1^L \frac{1}{e^x} dx = \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \left[-\frac{1}{e^x}\right]_1^L = \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \left(-\frac{1}{e^L} + \frac{1}{e}\right) = \frac{1}{e}$$

Observation:  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = 0$  does NOT guarantee  $\lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \int_a^L f(x) dx$  exists.

### Example 9.7.2

Find  $\int_0^{+\infty} \frac{1}{(x+1)(3x+2)} dx$

Note:  $(x+1)(3x+2)$  is a polynomial of degree 2.

$\frac{1}{(x+1)(3x+2)}$  decays as "fast" as  $\frac{1}{x^2}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \int_0^L \frac{1}{(x+1)(3x+2)} dx &= \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \int_0^L \frac{-1}{x+1} + \frac{3}{3x+2} dx \\ &= \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \left[ \ln|x+1| + \ln|3x+2| \right]_0^L \\ &= \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \ln \left| \frac{3L+2}{L+1} \right| - \ln 2 \\ &= \ln 3 - \ln 2 \end{aligned}$$

Example 9.7.3

Find  $\int_0^{+\infty} x e^{-2x} dx$

$$\begin{aligned} & \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \int_0^L x e^{-2x} dx \\ &= \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \int_0^L x d\left(-\frac{1}{2} e^{-2x}\right) \\ &= \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \left[-\frac{1}{2} x e^{-2x}\right]_0^L - \int_0^L -\frac{1}{2} e^{-2x} dx \\ &= \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} \left[-\frac{1}{2} x e^{-2x}\right]_0^L + \left[-\frac{1}{4} e^{-2x}\right]_0^L \\ & \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{tend to 0 when } L \rightarrow +\infty \\ \downarrow \qquad \qquad \downarrow \end{array} \\ &= \lim_{L \rightarrow +\infty} -\frac{1}{2} L e^{-2L} - \frac{1}{4} e^{-2L} + \frac{1}{4} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \end{aligned}$$

## 9.8 Inequalities Involving Integrals

Example 9.8.1

Define  $a_n = \int_0^1 \frac{x^n}{1+x^2} dx$  for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , show that  $\frac{1}{2(n+1)} \leq a_n \leq \frac{1}{n+1}$ .

Hence, find  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$ .

Note: For  $0 \leq x \leq 1$ ,  $1 \leq 1+x^2 \leq 2$

$$\frac{1}{2} \leq \frac{1}{1+x^2} \leq 1$$

$$\frac{x^n}{2} \leq \frac{x^n}{1+x^2} \leq x^n$$

$$\int_0^1 \frac{x^n}{2} dx \leq \int_0^1 \frac{x^n}{1+x^2} dx \leq \int_0^1 x^n dx$$

$$\frac{1}{2(n+1)} \leq \int_0^1 \frac{x^n}{1+x^2} dx \leq \frac{1}{n+1}$$

$$\therefore \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2(n+1)} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n+1} = 0$$

$\therefore$  By sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^1 \frac{x^n}{1+x^2} dx = 0$



Example 9.8.2

Let  $I_n = \frac{1}{n} \int_0^1 \frac{\sin nx}{1+x^2} dx$ , for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , prove that  $|I_n| \leq \frac{\pi}{4n}$ .

Hence, deduce  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} I_n = 0$ .

$$|I_n| = \frac{1}{n} \left| \int_0^1 \frac{\sin nx}{1+x^2} dx \right|$$

$$\leq \frac{1}{n} \int_0^1 \left| \frac{\sin nx}{1+x^2} \right| dx$$

$$\leq \frac{1}{n} \int_0^1 \frac{1}{1+x^2} dx$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} [\tan^{-1} x]_0^1$$

$$= \frac{\pi}{4n}$$

$$0 \leq |I_n| \leq \frac{\pi}{4n} \text{ and } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 0 = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\pi}{4n} = 0$$

$\therefore$  By sandwich theorem,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |I_n| = 0$  and so  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} I_n = 0$ .

Example 9.8.3

Let  $I_n = \int_0^1 e^t t^n dt$  where  $n$  is nonnegative integer.

a) Prove that  $I_n = e - nI_{n-1}$  for  $n \geq 1$ .

$$\text{Hence, deduce that } I_n = (-1)^{n+1} n! + e \sum_{r=0}^n (-1)^r \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}.$$

b) Show that  $\frac{1}{n+1} \leq I_n \leq \int_0^1 e t^n dt < \frac{e}{n}$  for all  $n \geq 1$ .

c) Hence, prove that  $e$  is an irrational number.

$$\text{a) For } n \geq 1, I_n = \int_0^1 e^t t^n dt$$

$$= \int_0^1 t^n de^t$$

$$= [t^n e^t]_0^1 - \int_0^1 e^t dt^n$$

$$= e - \int_0^1 n e^t t^{n-1} dt$$

$$= e - nI_{n-1}$$

$$I_n = e - nI_{n-1}$$

$$= e - n[e - (n-1)I_{n-2}]$$

$$= e - ne + n(n-1)I_{n-2}$$

$$= e - ne + n(n-1)[e - (n-2)I_{n-3}]$$

$$= e - ne + n(n-1)e - n(n-1)(n-2)I_{n-3}$$

⋮

$$= e - ne + n(n-1)e - \dots + (-1)^{n-1} n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 2e + (-1)^n n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 2 \cdot 1 \cdot I_0 \quad I_0 = \int_0^1 e^t dt$$

$$= e - ne + n(n-1)e - \dots + (-1)^{n-1} n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 2e + (-1)^n n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 2 \cdot 1 \cdot (e-1) \quad = [e^t]_0^1$$

$$= e - ne + n(n-1)e - \dots + (-1)^{n-1} n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 2e + (-1)^n n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 2 \cdot 1 \cdot e \quad = e - 1$$

$$+ (-1)^{n+1} n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 2 \cdot 1$$

$$= (-1)^{n+1} n! + e \sum_{r=0}^n (-1)^r \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$$

b) Note: For  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ ,  $1 \leq e^t \leq e$

$$t^n \leq e^t t^n \leq e t^n$$

$$\int_0^1 t^n dt \leq \int_0^1 e^t t^n dt \leq \int_0^1 e t^n dt$$

||  
I\_n

$$\int_0^1 t^n dt = \left[ \frac{1}{n+1} t^{n+1} \right]_0^1 = \frac{1}{n+1}$$

$$\int_0^1 e t^n dt = e \int_0^1 t^n dt = \frac{e}{n+1} < \frac{e}{n}$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{n+1} \leq I_n \leq \int_0^1 e t^n dt < \frac{e}{n}$$

c) From (a) and (b),

$$\frac{1}{n+1} \leq I_n < \frac{e}{n}$$

$$\frac{1}{n+1} \leq (-1)^{n+1} n! + e \sum_{r=0}^n (-1)^r \frac{n!}{(n-r)!} < \frac{e}{n}$$

$$\frac{1}{e(n+1)} \leq \frac{(-1)^{n+1} n!}{e} + \sum_{r=0}^n (-1)^r \frac{n!}{(n-r)!} < \frac{1}{n}$$

If  $e$  is rational, i.e.  $e = \frac{p}{q}$  where  $p, q \in \mathbb{N}$  (Note  $e > 0$ )

when we consider  $n = p$ ,

then  $\frac{(-1)^{n+1} n!}{e} + \sum_{r=0}^n (-1)^r \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$  is an integer which is impossible as  $0 < \frac{1}{e(n+1)}$  and  $\frac{1}{n} \leq 1$ !

$\therefore e$  is irrational.